

The **Bible** Unpacked

Intermediate Edition

A compilation of the Bible's teaching
for believers growing in the faith

paul mallison

The Bible Unpacked™

Intermediate Edition

A compilation of the Bible's teaching
for believers growing in the faith

paul mallison

The Bible Unpacked™ Copyright © 1994–2013 by Paul Mallison. All rights reserved.

This book may be freely reproduced for use for non-profit Christian purposes. Free electronic copies may be downloaded at: www.thebibleunpacked.net. In return, users are asked to increase their support of persecuted Christians – in prayer and if possible financially. (See www.thebibleunpacked.net/persecuted_Christians.htm for a list of organizations that help persecuted Christians.)

Unless otherwise indicated, all Scripture quotations are from the *NET Bible*® copyright ©1996–2006 by Biblical Studies Press, L.L.C. <http://www.bible.org/> All rights reserved. Scripture quoted by permission.

Scripture quotations marked “CEV” are from the ***Contemporary English Version*** Copyright © 1991, 1992, 1995 by American Bible Society. Used by Permission.

Scripture quotations marked “ESV” are taken from *The Holy Bible, English Standard Version*®, copyright © 2001 by Crossway Bibles, a division of Good News Publishers. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked “GNT” are from the ***Good News Translation in Today's English Version***- Second Edition Copyright © 1992 by American Bible Society. Used by Permission.

Scripture quotations marked “GW” are taken from ***God's Word***® Copyright 1995 God's Word to the Nations. Used by permission of Baker Publishing Group. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked “ISV” are taken from the *Holy Bible: International Standard Version*®, Release 1.44. Copyright © 1996–2007 by The ISV Foundation of Fullerton, California USA. Used by permission of Davidson Press, LLC. All rights reserved internationally.

Scripture quotations marked “NCV™” are taken from the ***New Century Version***®. Copyright © 2005 by Thomas Nelson, Inc. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked “NKJV” are taken from ***The New King James Version*** / Thomas Nelson Publishers, Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers., Copyright © 1982. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Quotations of short phrases from other Bible translations are on occasions included in comments on the verses. The copyright notices for these translations are given below.

Scripture quotations marked “AMP” are taken from the ***Amplified***® *Bible*, Copyright © 1954, 1958, 1962, 1964, 1965, 1987 by The Lockman Foundation. All rights reserved. Used by permission. (www.Lockman.org).

Scripture quotations marked “NASB” are taken from the ***New American Standard Bible***®, Copyright © 1960, 1962, 1963, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1975, 1977, 1995 by The Lockman Foundation. Used by permission.

Scripture quotations marked “NLT” are taken from the ***Holy Bible, New Living Translation***, copyright 1996. Used by permission of Tyndale House Publishers, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois 60189. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked “NRSV” are from the ***New Revised Standard Version of the Bible***, copyright © 1989 by the National Council of the Churches of Christ in the USA. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

This copy was made on: 9-Sep-13.

This book is dedicated to all the people who have prayed for my family and me these last twenty-seven years. I am confident that it is a “fruit” of their prayers.

No payment is required for this book. In return, users are asked to increase their support of persecuted Christians – in prayer and if possible financially. May readers with a heart for the persecuted church be blessed by this book.

www.thebibleunpacked.net/persecuted_Christians.htm

Contents

Foreword.....	7
Using the PDF File	9
The Seven Editions	11

Section I. What to Know

Part A. God and Spiritual Powers

1. God's Being.....	17
2. God's Character.....	25
3. Jesus Christ.....	33
4. The Holy Spirit	41
5. Angels, Satan and Demons	49

Part B. God and the World: Basics

6. God's Creation	59
7. God's Sovereignty	67
8. God's Word	75
9. The Problem of Sin	83
10. God's Judgment.....	91

Part C. God and the World: Jesus Christ

11. God's Promised Messiah.....	101
12. Jesus Christ's Mission.....	109
13. Salvation through Jesus Christ.....	117
14. The New Order.....	125
15. 'The Last Things'.....	133

Part D. God and His Own People

16. The Standing of God's People.....	143
17. Keys to God's Interaction with His People.....	151
18. God's Transformation of His People.....	159
19. God's Care of His People.....	167
20. God's Plans for His People.....	175

Section II. What to Do

Part E. Relating to God

21. Being Right with God	187
22. Having Faith in God	195
23. Loving, Fearing and Obeying God	203
24. Connecting with God.....	211
25. Exalting God	219

Part F. Church Life

26. Being One Body.....	229
27. Worshiping God	237
28. Serving God.....	245
29. Significant Practices	253
30. Church Leadership.....	261

Part G. Relating to People

31. Love	271
32. Justice	279
33. Wisdom.....	287
34. Common Relationships.....	295
35. Spreading the Gospel.....	303

Part H. Persevering

36. Standing Firm	313
37. Rejecting Sin.....	321
38. Major Pitfalls	329
39. Hard Times.....	337
40. Persecution	345

Bibliography.....	353
Major Headings	356
Scripture Index	373
Subject Index	385
Supporting Persecuted Christians	397
Quick Navigation	398

Foreword

Introduction

The aim of this book is to give a brief overview of the Bible's teachings in a clear and readable order, primarily using the Bible itself – i.e. verses taken from the Bible.

The chapters contain major headings, which in turn contain groups of sub-headings. The subheadings are followed by verses, from which they have been derived. The parts of the verses that the subheadings reflect are in italics. Some verses are followed by a comment.

To help readers have a grasp of the context of verses, often a brief introduction is included, in square brackets. These introductions usually just state who is speaking and often who they are speaking to. Apart from God and Jesus Christ, the most prominent speakers are:

- Moses – who led the Israelites and taught them God's laws;
- David – Israel's greatest king who wrote many of the psalms, most of which are essentially prayers;
- Solomon and other wise teachers – who wrote the astute insights in the books called Proverbs and Ecclesiastes;
- Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Daniel and other prophets – who spoke to the people of Israel on God's behalf; and
- Paul, Peter, John and other leaders of the early church – who spoke to various groups and wrote letters to believers and churches.

Much care has been taken to interpret the verses in the light of both the passage they are from and Scripture as a whole. Nevertheless, if you encounter a verse that is used to teach something that is contrary to your understanding, read the section in the Bible from which it is taken and also consider how its teaching fits in with Scripture as a whole (e.g. interpret OT teaching in the light of NT teaching).

Note that rather than reading this book from start to finish, for variety read chapters alternatively from the two major sections of the book, *What to Know* and *What to Do*.

Symbols Used

In comments, † indicate that the verse/s referred to have been included above, in the same subsection.

Occasionally “. . .” appears at the end of a heading and at the beginning of the following heading. This is to indicate that the teaching in the second heading follows on closely from that of the first one.

About the Author

Paul Mallison has a BA Dip Ed from Macquarie University, Sydney. He has spent the majority of his working life teaching students from a cross section of ages and backgrounds. In his work he has composed numerous teaching materials.

Paul is a son of best-selling Australian author and international educator, the late Rev. Dr John Mallison. He is credited with extensive work on the final draft of the last two of his father’s 20 published books.

He considers the theology of his *The Bible Unpacked* material to be “evangelical”. As for a statement of faith, he adheres to the Apostle’s Creed. Paul lives in Sydney, Australia.

Using the PDF File

It is recommended that *Adobe Reader* be used to view this file. This file will not display correctly in *Preview*, an Apple program.

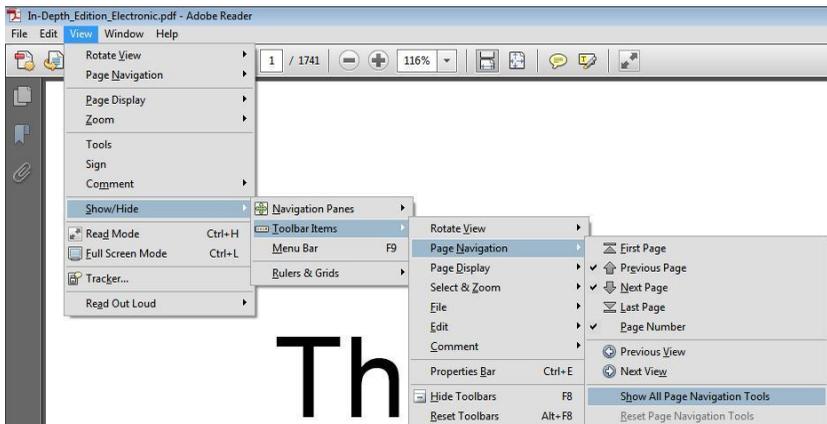
Hyperlinks

Clicking on a hyperlink will navigate to the heading or verse indicated. If using *Adobe Reader X*, to ensure that the heading or verse will always be displayed at the top of the screen, from the **View** menu select **Page Display** and then **Two Page Enable Scrolling** (if the monitor is wide enough) or **Enable Scrolling**.

Any text in dark blue is a hyperlink. Headings in the main contents and in the contents at the start of each chapter are hyperlinks to the headings in the text. All the headings in the *Major Headings* list are hyperlinks to the headings in the text – and vice versa. The page numbers in the *Scripture Index* and *Subject Index* are hyperlinks to the verses and topics listed.

After clicking a hyperlink, to return to it click **Previous View** (a toolbar button with a white arrow inside a blue circle). If the user has since moved to another page, they will need to click this button more than once.

If this button is not displayed, select the menu options shown in the picture below. Alternatively, use **Alt + ←** (i.e. hold down the Alt key and press the left arrow key). On an Apple computer use **Command + ←**.



Hyperlinks to the NET Bible Website

With internet access, click on a verse's book name or chapter to see the whole of the chapter that it is in on the NET Bible website – net.bible.org. (If your web browser is not already open, allow a few extra seconds for the website to appear.)

If you get a security warning asking whether you trust the website, ensure **Remember this action for this site for all PDF documents** is checked and then click **Allow**. If you are using Adobe Reader and it will not allow you access, click the **Edit** menu (Windows) or the **Reader** menu (Mac OS), and then click **Preferences**. In the subsequent dialog box, click **Trust Manager** on the left and then click the **Change Settings** button. This will open a dialog box that will enable you to allow access to the website.

For Internet Explorer users, to open links to the NET site in the same window, in Internet Explorer do the following:

- Press **Alt + X** on your keyboard.
- Click **Internet Options**.
- Click **Settings** under **Tabs** (towards the bottom of the **General** page which is displayed by default).
- Under **When a pop-up is encountered** select **Always open pop-ups in a new tab**.
- Under **Open links from other programs in:**, select either **A new tab in the current window** or **The current tab or window**.

Users should note the generosity of the publishers of the NET, in allowing such a large number of verses from the NET to be used in this edition.

Quick Navigation Page

The last page in the file enables quick and efficient navigation, with hyperlinks to all: chapters; lists of section headings; Bible books in the *Scripture Index*; letters in the *Subject Index*; and other main headings.

This can be quickly accessed by clicking the **Show Last Page** button. This will be displayed on the toolbar once the user has clicked on the menu options shown in the earlier picture. Alternatively, press **Ctrl + End**.

The Seven Editions

There are seven editions of *The Bible Unpacked*, as shown below. Each edition is an abbreviated version of the next one. Four of the editions have studies based on them, with the same text and questions added. For free downloads, go to www.thebibleunpacked.net.

 **Two-Minute Edition** – *Key Bible teachings for people “on the run”.* For giving to non-Christians.

 **Pocket Edition** – *Key Bible teachings for seekers of truth.* Largely for giving to inquiring non-Christians or young new Christians.

 **Concise Edition** – *Key Bible teachings for new believers.* For either new or young Christians. Suitable to give to non-Christian friends. Has study series based on it.



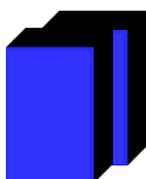
 **Foundations Edition** – *A compilation of the Bible’s teaching for believers consolidating their faith.* For newer Christians. Study series is ideal for studies with newer believers.



 **Intermediate Edition** – *A compilation of the Bible’s teaching for believers growing in the faith.* For developing a sound understanding of the faith. Studies are excellent for Bible study groups.



 **Comprehensive Edition** – *A compilation of the Bible’s teaching for believers established in the faith.* For a more comprehensive knowledge of the faith. Studies are ideal for studying topics in detail.



In-Depth Edition – *A compilation of the Bible’s teaching for teachers and students of the Bible.* For pastors, church leaders, Bible students and all who want a deep understanding of the faith. Available in a single pdf file with over 90,000 hyperlinks.

With each edition being an abbreviated version of the next longest one, they all have the same basic structure. This allows readers to access the Bible's teachings at an appropriate level and then to progress through to the longer editions to obtain a deeper understanding.

Note that in the *In-Depth Edition* – which the other editions ultimately come from – each heading was derived from the verses following it. As such the headings are based on groups of verses with a common theme, rather than the verses being selected to support the headings.

For more information go to: www.thebibleunpacked.net.

Section I.

What to Know

Part A.

God and Spiritual Powers

1. God's Being

I. Basics

God's Form	18
God's Glory	19
God's Personhood	20
God's Eternity.....	21

II. God's Pre-Eminence

God's Greatness.....	22
God's Power	23
God's Knowledge and Wisdom	23
God's Name.....	24

I. Basics

The concepts in the first half of this chapter are fundamental to understanding what God is like, as they concern basic attributes of his being. These include attributes which show God to be very different to us, but also attributes which indicate that he is like us in that he is a personal being.

God's Form

God is one

[JESUS, QUOTING MOSES:] Listen, Israel, *the Lord our God, the Lord is one.* ... ³²The expert in the law said to him, *“That is true, Teacher; you are right to say that he is one, and there is no one else besides him.* MARK 12:29B, 32

God is a single entity. He is only one being.

God is spirit

God is spirit, and the people who worship him must worship in spirit and truth. JOHN 4:24

God's nature is spirit; he is a spiritual being. So God is not a physical being, in contrast to people and particularly to idols.

God is everywhere

“I am a God who is near,” says the LORD. “I am also a God who is far away.” ²⁴*“No one can hide where I cannot see him,” says the LORD. “I fill all of heaven and earth,” says the LORD.* JEREMIAH 23:23–24 NCV™

Note that “LORD” is the personal name of God.

So, God is always near

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Where can I go to escape your spirit? Where can I flee to escape your presence?* ⁸*If I were to ascend to heaven, you would be there. If I were to sprawl out in Sheol [the world of the dead], there you would be. ⁹If I were to fly away on the wings of the dawn, and settle down on the other side of the sea, ¹⁰even there your hand would guide me, your right hand would grab hold of me.* PSALMS 139:7–10

God's Glory

The Bible often speaks of God's glory in reference to his wondrous being. In doing so, it has in view God's essence and/or his attributes. Regarding his essence, God's glory pertains to his essential being itself, such that his presence is on occasions perceived as his glory and spoken of in terms of it. Regarding his attributes, God's glory emanates in part from his attributes – such as his power – which in a sense reflect the glory of God's essence and presence.

Glory is a prominent and key attribute of God

They [kings] will sing about the ways of the LORD, for *great is the glory of the LORD!* [PSALMS 138:5](#) ISV

All of us have sinned and fallen short of God's glory. [ROMANS 3:23](#) CEV

The fact that it is God's glory that people are measured by or compared to, underlines that glory is a key attribute of God.

God's glory manifests his presence

But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked intently toward heaven and *saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God.* [ACTS 7:55](#)

Here "the glory of God" is correlated with "God" himself – and so God's presence.

In association with his glory, God is surrounded by brilliant light

[EZEKIEL, DESCRIBING A VISION OF GOD:] I then saw what looked like a throne made of sapphire, and sitting on the throne was a figure in the shape of a human. ²⁷From the waist up, it was glowing like metal in a hot furnace, and from the waist down it looked like the flames of a fire. *The figure was surrounded by a bright light,* ²⁸*as colorful as a rainbow that appears after a storm. I realized I was seeing the brightness of the LORD's glory!* [EZEKIEL 1:26–28A](#) CEV

God's glory is evidenced by the universe that he has made

The heavens declare the glory of God; the sky displays his handiwork. [PSALMS 19:1](#)

God's Personhood

God is not a "thing" but a personal being with who we can interrelate.

God has a mind – knowing and understanding things

For *the LORD is a God who knows; he evaluates what people do.*

1 SAMUEL 2:3B

[DAVID:] And you, Solomon my son, obey the God of your father and serve him with a submissive attitude and a willing spirit, for *the LORD examines all minds and understands every motive of one's thoughts.* 1 CHRONICLES 28:9A

God has a will

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] In the Messiah we were also chosen when we were predestined according to the purpose of the one [God] *who does everything according to the intention of his will, ...* EPHESIANS 1:11 ISV

God has feelings and character

But *the LORD God felt sorry for his people*, and instead of destroying the temple, he sent prophets who warned the people over and over about their sins. 2 CHRONICLES 36:15 CEV

You have heard of Job's endurance and you have seen the Lord's purpose, that *the Lord is full of compassion and mercy.* JAMES 5:11B

God communicates

After *God spoke long ago in various portions and in various ways to our ancestors through the prophets,* ²*in these last days he has spoken to us in a son*, whom he appointed heir of all things, and through whom he created the world. HEBREWS 1:1–2

God interacts with people, responding to their needs

Draw near to God and he will draw near to you. JAMES 4:8A

[GOD, SPEAKING OF A PERSON DEVOTED TO HIM:] *When he calls out to me, I will answer him. I will be with him when he is in trouble; I will rescue him and bring him honor.* PSALMS 91:15

God's Eternity

God has always been alive, the first of all things

Your throne, O LORD, has been firm from the beginning, and you existed before time began. PSALMS 93:2 GNT

This is what the LORD, Israel's king, says, their protector, the LORD who commands armies: *"I am the first and I am the last, there is no God but me.* ISAIAH 44:6

God will live forever

[KING NEBUCHADNEZZAR:] *I extolled the Most High, and I praised and glorified the one who lives forever. For his authority is an everlasting authority, and his kingdom extends from one generation to the next.*

DANIEL 4:34B

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF GOD:] *Now to the eternal king, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever! Amen.* 1 TIMOTHY 1:17

Moreover, God transcends time

Now, dear friends, do not let this one thing escape your notice, that *a single day is like a thousand years with the Lord and a thousand years are like a single day.* 2 PETER 3:8

God dwells outside of the limitations of time, not bound by its finite perspective. From his eternal perspective, diverse periods such as a day and a thousand years are both small, even insignificant. To God the distinction between them is merely relative.

God is self-existing

For as *the Father has life in himself*, so he has granted the Son also to have life in himself. JOHN 5:26 ESV

God does not change

All generous giving and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from *the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation or the slightest hint of change.* JAMES 1:17

II. God's Pre-Eminence

See also: *God is holy*, p. 26

A failure of many of us in the church today is that we have an inadequate view of God, failing to fully appreciate his pre-eminence. All Christians need to understand and be mindful of God's surpassing greatness and incomparable capabilities – notably his power, knowledge and wisdom.

God's Greatness

God is great and awesome

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *For the LORD your God is God of gods and Lord of lords, the great, mighty, and awesome God who is unbiased and takes no bribe, ...* [DEUTERONOMY 10:17](#)

God is greater than all others

[JESUS:] *My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one can snatch them from my Father's hand.* [JOHN 10:29](#)

There is no one like God

[JEREMIAH:] *I said, "There is no one like you, LORD. You are great. And you are renowned for your power. ⁷Everyone should revere you, O King of all nations, because you deserve to be revered. For there is no one like you among any of the wise people of the nations nor among any of their kings.* [JEREMIAH 10:6–7](#)

God is in fact beyond our comprehension

Yes, God is great – beyond our knowledge! The number of his years is unsearchable. [JOB 36:26](#)

Can you discover the essence of God? Can you find out the perfection of the Almighty? ⁸It is higher than the heavens – what can you do? It is deeper than Sheol – what can you know? ⁹Its measure is longer than the earth, and broader than the sea. [JOB 11:7–9](#)

The extent of God's being and attributes are far beyond our understanding.

God's Power

God's power is incomparable and unlimited

He [Jehoshaphat] prayed: "O LORD God of our ancestors, you are the God who lives in heaven and *rules over all the kingdoms of the nations. You possess strength and power; no one can stand against you.* 2 CHRONICLES 20:6

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF GOD:] You will also know *the unlimited greatness of his power as it works with might and strength* for us, the believers. EPHESIANS 1:19 GW

God can do all things – nothing is too hard

[JOB, TO GOD:] I know that *you can do all things, and that no purpose of yours can be thwarted.* JOB 42:2 ESV

[THE ANGEL GABRIEL, TO MARY:] Your relative Elizabeth is also going to have a son, even though she is old. No one thought she could ever have a baby, but in three months she will have a son. ³⁷*Nothing is impossible for God!* LUKE 1:36–37 CEV

God performs awesome deeds

[ISAIAH, TO GOD:] When you *performed awesome deeds that took us by surprise*, you came down, and the mountains trembled before you. ISAIAH 64:3

God's Knowledge and Wisdom

God knows everything

God is greater than our conscience and *knows all things.* 1 JOHN 3:20B

God sees all people, seeing and knowing all that they do

The LORD watches from heaven; *he sees all people.* ¹⁴From the place where he lives *he looks carefully at all the earth's inhabitants.* ¹⁵He is the one who forms every human heart, *and takes note of all their actions.* PSALMS 33:13–15

God knows people's minds

This is what the LORD says: *This is what you are thinking, O house of Israel; I know what goes through your minds.* EZEKIEL 11:5B

God knows the future

[GOD, TO ISRAEL:] *From the beginning I revealed the end. From long ago I told you things that had not yet happened, saying, "My plan will stand, and I'll do everything I intended to do."* ISAIAH 46:10 GW

God has incredible wisdom

Our Lord is great and has awesome power; *there is no limit to his wisdom.* PSALMS 147:5

God's Name

God declared his name to be the "LORD"

Then the LORD came down in the cloud and stood there with Moses, and *the LORD called out his name: the LORD.* EXODUS 34:5 NCV™

Then Moses said to God, "If I come to the people of Israel and say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you,' and *they ask me, 'What is his name?' what shall I say to them?*" ¹⁴God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And he said, "Say this to the people of Israel, 'I AM has sent me to you.'" ¹⁵God also said to Moses, "Say this to the people of Israel, 'The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, and thus I am to be remembered throughout all generations." EXODUS 3:13–15 ESV

"LORD" (v. 15) can be derived from "I AM" (v. 14). For the actual Hebrew that is rendered as "LORD" is "YHWH" (most likely pronounced "Yahweh") and it "is derived from the verb *HAYAH, to be*" (NASB text note) to which "I AM" is also related. Note that "I AM WHO I AM" (v. 14) may well have the sense: "I will be who I will be". This title and its shortened form "I AM" (v. 14) appear to express God's unchanging nature, self-existence, self-determination and omnipresence.

2. God's Character

I. Holy Characteristics

Holiness.....	26
Righteousness	27
Faithfulness.....	27
Anger	28

II. Loving Characteristics

Love	29
Mercy	30
Goodness.....	31
Jealousy.....	31

I. Holy Characteristics

A good understanding of God requires a balanced understanding of his character, including the fundamental attribute of holiness. To obtain such an understanding, we must “take to heart” all aspects of his character. As well as the many characteristics that we find consoling, we also need to appreciate those that inspire godly fear.

Holiness

God’s holiness involves his moral purity. It concerns God’s separateness from and his intolerance of that which is morally impure. Holiness is fundamental to the other characteristics that follow in the first half of this chapter.

God is holy

And one [angelic being] called to another and said: “*Holy, holy, holy is the LORD of hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory!*” [ISAIAH 6:3](#) ESV

Note that the title “the LORD of hosts” points to God’s sovereign power over all things.

There is nothing bad in God . . .

[A PSALMIST:] They will say that the LORD is good. He is my Rock, and *there is no wrong in him.* [PSALMS 92:15](#) NCV™

. . . and God cannot tolerate evil

[HABAKKUK, TO GOD:] *You are too just to tolerate evil; you are unable to condone wrongdoing.* [HABAKKUK 1:13A](#)

God shows himself to be holy by what he does

The LORD All-Powerful will receive glory by judging fairly; *the holy God will show himself holy by doing what is right.* [ISAIAH 5:16](#) NCV™

There is no one holy like God

No one is holy like the LORD! There is no one other than you! There is no rock like our God! [1 SAMUEL 2:2](#)

Righteousness

God is righteous and just

But *the LORD of hosts is exalted in justice, and the Holy God shows himself holy in righteousness.* [ISAIAH 5:16](#) ESV

All God does is right and just

Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and exalt and glorify the King of heaven, for *all his deeds are right and his ways are just.* [DANIEL 4:37A](#)

As such, God is truthful . . .

[GOD:] *I the LORD speak the truth; I declare what is right.* [ISAIAH 45:19B](#) ESV

. . . and God does not show favoritism

For *there is no partiality with God.* [ROMANS 2:11](#)

Faithfulness

God is faithful

The steadfast love of the LORD never ceases; his mercies never come to an end; ²³they are new every morning; *great is your faithfulness.* [LAMENTATIONS 3:22–23](#) ESV

God never forsakes nor fails

[DAVID, TO GOD:] Your loyal followers trust in you, for you, *LORD, do not abandon those who seek your help.* [PSALMS 9:10](#)

David also said to his son Solomon, “Be strong and brave, and do the work. Don’t be afraid or discouraged, because the LORD God, my God, is with you. *He will not fail you or leave you until all the work for the Temple of the LORD is finished.* [1 CHRONICLES 28:20](#) NCV™

God does not lie nor change his mind – he keeps his promises

God is no mere human! *He doesn’t tell lies or change his mind. God always keeps his promises.* [NUMBERS 23:19](#) CEV

Anger

Although we usually view anger in a negative light, this is not how the Bible depicts God's anger, or wrath. God's anger is always justified and righteous, consistent with his holiness. Moreover, it occurs in response to that which is contrary to his holiness. Unlike human anger, God's anger is never uncontrolled, wayward or spasmodic – and is tempered by his mercy, notably where his own people are concerned.

God expresses anger, which has awesome consequences

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *Who can really fathom the intensity of your anger? Your raging fury causes people to fear you.* PSALMS 90:11

Therefore [due to their evil] *the anger of the LORD was kindled against his people, and he stretched out his hand against them and struck them, and the mountains quaked; and their corpses were as refuse in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger has not turned away, and his hand is stretched out still.* ISAIAH 5:25 ESV

God is slow to anger and often holds it back . . .

The LORD is slow to anger and abounding in loyal love, forgiving iniquity and transgression, but by no means clearing the guilty ... NUMBERS 14:18A

Yet he is compassionate. He forgives sin and does not destroy. *He often holds back his anger, and does not stir up his fury.* PSALMS 78:38

. . . and God does not stay angry

He does not retain His anger forever, Because He delights in mercy. MICAH 7:18B NKJV

God's anger arises in response to sin and disobedience

[GOD, TO BAASHA THE KING OF ISRAEL:] Yet you followed in Jeroboam's footsteps and encouraged my people Israel to sin; *their sins have made me angry.* 1 KINGS 16:2B

[GOD:] *I will angrily seek vengeance on the nations that do not obey me.* MICAH 5:15

II. Loving Characteristics

God's love is one of the two primary characteristics from which his other personal characteristics emanate, the other primary one being his holiness. Comprehending and persistently being mindful of God's love and his associated characteristics provides great encouragement for believers.

Love

God is love – as shown in him giving his only Son, to save us

The person who does not love does not know God, because *God is love*. ⁹*This is how God's love was revealed among us: God sent his unique Son into the world so that we might live through him.* ¹⁰*This is love: not that we have loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son to be the atoning sacrifice for our sins. ...* ¹⁶*We have come to know and rely on the love that God has for us. God is love, and the person who abides in love abides in God, and God abides in him.*

1 JOHN 4:8-10, 16 ISV

The phrase "God is love" (vv. 8, 16) implies that God's nature is fundamentally love, rather than that love is simply a characteristic of God. It also suggests that God is the sole source of love and so that love does not exist apart from him.

God's love is great

[DAVID, TO GOD:] For *your loyal love extends beyond the sky*, and your faithfulness reaches the clouds. PSALMS 108:4

God's love is constant

How precious, O God, is your constant love! PSALMS 36:7A GNT

God's love lasts forever

[ETHAN, TO GOD:] I know that *your love will last for all time*, that your faithfulness is as permanent as the sky. PSALMS 89:2 GNT

Give thanks to the LORD, for he is good, for *his steadfast love endures forever*. PSALMS 136:1 ESV

Mercy

God is merciful

[MOSES, TO ISRAEL:] *The LORD your God is a merciful God. He will not abandon you, destroy you, or forget the promise to your ancestors that he swore he would keep.* DEUTERONOMY 4:31 GW

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Because of your great mercy, I come to your house, LORD ...* PSALMS 25:6A CEV

God is also compassionate

As a father has compassion on his children, so the LORD has compassion on his faithful followers. PSALMS 103:13

Due to his mercy and compassion, God is long-suffering

[LEVITES, PRAYING TO GOD AND MAKING REFERENCE TO THEIR ANCESTORS:] Then, when they were at rest again, they went back to doing evil before you. Then you abandoned them to their enemies, and they gained dominion over them. *When they again cried out to you, in your compassion you heard from heaven and rescued them time and again.* ²⁹And you solemnly admonished them in order to return them to your law, but they behaved presumptuously and did not obey your commandments. They sinned against your ordinances – those by which an individual, if he obeys them, will live. They boldly turned from you; they rebelled and did not obey. ³⁰*You prolonged your kindness with them for many years, and you solemnly admonished them by your Spirit through your prophets. Still they paid no attention, so you delivered them into the hands of the neighboring peoples.* ³¹*However, due to your abundant mercy you did not do away with them altogether; you did not abandon them. For you are a merciful and compassionate God.* NEHEMIAH 9:28–31

Due to his mercy and compassion, God is forgiving

Who is a God like you? *You forgive sin and overlook the rebellion of your faithful people. You will not be angry forever, because you would rather show mercy.* ¹⁹*You will again have compassion on us. You will overcome our wrongdoing. You will throw all our sins into the deep sea.* MICAH 7:18–19 GW

Goodness

God is good

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *You are good and you do good.* PSALMS 119:68A

God exercises kindness

How can I repay the LORD for all his acts of kindness to me? PSALMS 116:12

God is generous

But if anyone is deficient in wisdom, he should ask *God, who gives to all generously* and without reprimand, and it will be given to him. JAMES 1:5

The phrase “without reprimand” may be implying that God “won’t correct you for asking” (CEV). In any case, the verse points to the fact that God gives “ungrudgingly” (AMP, NRSV; cf. NLT).

Jealousy

The Hebrew and Greek words translated as “jealousy” convey a very forceful passion. When used of God, “jealousy” is spoken of in a positive light, as a virtuous attribute aligned with his profound commitment to and love for his people.

God’s jealousy in regard to his people is comparable to that of a husband or wife. Their jealousy is a product of their intense love for each other and evoked by anything that poses a threat to their relationship. As such God’s jealousy is expressed in action against whatever threatens his people or his relationship with them. Thus it is expressed both against hostile forces – bringing salvation to his people – and in punishing any unfaithfulness of his people, leading them back to him.

God is a jealous God

[MOSES, TO ISRAEL:] *For the LORD your God is a consuming fire; he is a jealous God.* DEUTERONOMY 4:24

Here God’s jealousy is compared to fire devouring or destroying that which has aroused it.

God's jealousy arises in response to his people's sin

Judah did evil in the sight of the LORD. *They made him more jealous by their sins than their ancestors had done.* 1 KINGS 14:22

God is also jealous for his people's well-being

Thus says the LORD of hosts: I am jealous for Zion with great jealousy, and I am jealous for her with great wrath. ³Thus says the LORD: I have returned to Zion and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem, and Jerusalem shall be called the faithful city, and the mountain of the LORD of hosts, the holy mountain. ⁴Thus says the LORD of hosts: Old men and old women shall again sit in the streets of Jerusalem, each with staff in hand because of great age. ⁵And the streets of the city shall be full of boys and girls playing in its streets.

ZECHARIAH 8:2-5 ESV

God's jealousy for Zion (v. 2) – i.e. Jerusalem - has in view her restoration (vv. 3-5; cf. GNT) and expressing wrath towards her enemies (cf. AMP, CEV, GNT).

Remember the persecuted

3. Jesus Christ

I. General

Jesus Christ's Eternity.....	34
Jesus Christ's Pre-Eminence	35
Jesus Christ's Character.....	36
Jesus Christ's Name.....	36

II. Jesus Christ and God

Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (I): General.....	37
Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (II): Testimony	38
Jesus Christ Is Identified with God.....	39
Jesus Christ Is Treated like God Is.....	39
Jesus Christ Acts in Subordination to God	40

I. General

The NT makes remarkable claims about aspects of Jesus Christ's being and his character. In doing so it shows Jesus Christ's nature to mirror that of God, and so points to his deity (his "God nature"). The NT also often refers to Jesus Christ's "name", making it a further concept that is important to grasp.

Jesus Christ's Eternity

Jesus Christ existed in the beginning . . .

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] I am writing to you, fathers, because you know *him who has existed from the beginning*. 1 JOHN 2:13A GNT

Jesus Christ existed in the beginning, before all time.

. . . Jesus Christ was before all things

[JESUS, TO GOD:] And now, Father, glorify me at your side with *the glory I had with you before the world was created*. JOHN 17:5

Jesus Christ will be alive forever

But because *Jesus lives forever, he will never stop serving as priest*.²⁵ So *he is able always to save those who come to God through him because he always lives*, asking God to help them. HEBREWS 7:24–25 NCV™

Jesus Christ is self-existing – he is "the life"

For as the Father has life in himself, so *he has granted the Son also to have life in himself*. JOHN 5:26 ESV

Jesus said to her, "*I am the resurrection and the life*. The person who believes in me, even though he dies, will live. JOHN 11:25 ISV

Descriptions of Jesus Christ as "the life" reflect the fact that he has life inherent (cf. 5:26 ↑) as part of his essential nature, and as such is self-existing. Primarily they point to Jesus Christ as the source of life – the one who gives life – as the latter part of this verse suggests.

Jesus Christ remains the same

Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever! HEBREWS 13:8

Jesus Christ's Pre-Eminence

Jesus Christ is greater than all things

He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation, ¹⁶for all things in heaven and on earth were created by him – all things, whether visible or invisible, whether thrones or dominions, whether principalities or powers – all things were created through him and for him. ¹⁷He himself is before all things and all things are held together in him. ¹⁸He is the head of the body, the church, as well as the beginning, the firstborn from among the dead, so that he himself may become first in all things. [COLOSSIANS 1:15–18](#)

Jesus Christ has divine glory

When the Son of Man comes in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit on his glorious throne. [MATTHEW 25:31](#)

Note that “the Son of Man” was the title Jesus used for himself the most. It is a messianic title, but it also underlines his humanity.

Jesus Christ has mighty, sovereign power

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But our citizenship is in heaven – and we also await a savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, ²¹who will transform these humble bodies of ours into the likeness of his glorious body by means of *that power by which he is able to subject all things to himself.* [PHILIPPIANS 3:20–21](#)

Jesus Christ has superlative knowledge and wisdom

[THE DISCIPLES, TO JESUS:] Now *we know that you know everything ...* [JOHN 16:30](#)

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] For *I will give you the words along with the wisdom that none of your adversaries will be able to withstand or contradict.* [LUKE 21:15](#)

Christ has wisdom superior to that of any adversary that we face.

Jesus Christ is everywhere

So Jesus came down, and he is the same One who went up above all the sky. *Christ did that to fill everything with his presence.* [EPHESIANS 4:10](#) NCV™

Jesus Christ's Character

Jesus Christ is holy and righteous

[BELIEVERS, TO GOD:] Then they turned against *your holy Servant Jesus*, your chosen Messiah. [ACTS 4:27](#) CEV

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, *Jesus Christ the righteous One*, ... [1 JOHN 2:1B](#)

Jesus Christ is faithful

But *the Lord is faithful*, and he will strengthen you and protect you from the evil one. [2 THESSALONIANS 3:3](#)

Jesus Christ is loving

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] And I pray that you and all God's holy people will have the power to *understand the greatness of Christ's love—how wide and how long and how high and how deep that love is*.¹⁹ *Christ's love is greater than anyone can ever know*, but I pray that you will be able to know that love. Then you can be filled with the fullness of God. [EPHESIANS 3:18–19](#) NCV™

Jesus Christ's Name

In biblical times, a person's name represented their whole person – including their nature, authority and significance or purpose. This concept is in view in references to the "name" of a person.

Jesus Christ's "name" signifies Jesus Christ himself

For there is no distinction between the Jew and the Greek, for the same Lord is Lord of all, who richly blesses *all who call on him*.¹³ *For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved*.
[ROMANS 10:12–13](#)

These verses illustrate that the "name" of Jesus Christ signifies or embodies Jesus Christ himself by the use of the equivalent phrases "call on him" (v. 12) and "calls on the name of the Lord" (v. 13).

II. Jesus Christ and God

The claim that Jesus Christ is the Son of God is one of the most central teachings in the NT. In addition to this, the NT says much that associates Jesus Christ with God. This teaching forms the basis of a large portion of what distinguishes Christianity from other religions.

Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (I): General

Jesus Christ is the Son of God . . .

Therefore since we [believers] have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, *Jesus the Son of God*, let us hold fast to our confession. [HEBREWS 4:14](#)

. . . Jesus Christ is God's only Son

God has sent his one and only Son into the world so that we may live through him. [1 JOHN 4:9B](#)

Jesus Christ is the image of God

...the glorious gospel of *Christ, who is the image of God*.
[2 CORINTHIANS 4:4B](#)

The assertion that Jesus Christ is the image of God – having the nature and fullness of God (as per the following subsection) – reflects and supports the assertion that he is the Son of God.

Jesus Christ has the form and fullness of God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] You should have the same attitude toward one another that Christ Jesus had, ⁶who though *he existed in the form of God* did not regard equality with God as something to be grasped, ...
[PHILIPPIANS 2:5–6](#)

For God was pleased to have all his fullness dwell in the Son ...
[COLOSSIANS 1:19](#)

The phrase “all his fullness” refers to: the fullness of God’s nature (cf. GNT) – “the sum total of the divine perfection, powers, and attributes” (AMP); and/or “all of himself” (NCV; cf. CEV, NLT), meaning that God himself in all his fullness dwells in Jesus Christ.

Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (II): Testimony

God testified to Jesus Christ being his Son

After Jesus was baptized, just as he was coming up out of the water, the heavens opened and *he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming on him.* ¹⁷*And a voice from heaven said, “This is my one dear Son; in him I take great delight.”* MATTHEW 3:16–17

Others also testified to Jesus Christ being the Son of God

When evil spirits saw Jesus, they fell down before him and shouted, “You are the Son of God!” MARK 3:11 NCV™

And John gave this testimony: “I saw the Spirit come down like a dove from heaven and stay on him. ³³I still did not know that he was the one, but God, who sent me to baptize with water, had said to me, ‘You will see the Spirit come down and stay on a man; he is the one who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.’ ³⁴*I have seen it,” said John, “and I tell you that he is the Son of God.”* JOHN 1:32–34 GNT

Jesus Christ’s deeds are evidence that he is the Son of God

But these [miraculous signs] are recorded so that you may believe that *Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God*, and that by believing you may have life in his name. JOHN 20:31

Other events of Jesus Christ’s incarnation are further evidence

Then Jesus cried out again with a loud voice and gave up his spirit. ⁵¹*Just then the temple curtain was torn in two, from top to bottom. The earth shook and the rocks were split apart.* ⁵²*And tombs were opened, and the bodies of many saints who had died were raised. ...* ⁵⁴*Now when the centurion and those with him who were guarding Jesus saw the earthquake and what took place, they were extremely terrified and said, “Truly this one was God’s Son!”* MATTHEW 27:50–52, 54

It [the gospel] is about his Son, our Lord Jesus Christ: as to his humanity, he was born a descendant of David; ⁴*as to his divine holiness, he was shown with great power to be the Son of God by being raised from death.* ROMANS 1:3–4 GNT

Jesus’ resurrection is a weighty testimony to him being the Son of God.

Jesus Christ Is Identified with God

Jesus Christ and God the Father are one – each is in the other

[JESUS, PRAYING FOR BELIEVERS:] Holy Father, keep them safe by the power of your name, the name you gave me, so that they will be one, just as *you and I are one*. ... ²¹Father, I pray that they can be one. *As you are in me and I am in you*, I pray that they can also be one in us. JOHN 17:11B, 21A NCV

This speaks of an inseparable unity, including a unity of purpose.

To know or see Jesus Christ is to know or see the Father

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *If you have known me, you will know my Father too. And from now on you do know him and have seen him.*"

⁸Philip said, "Lord, show us the Father, and we will be content."

⁹Jesus replied, "Have I been with you for so long, and you have not known me, Philip? *The person who has seen me has seen the Father!* How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" JOHN 14:7-9

Jesus Christ is called "God"

Thomas replied to him [Jesus], "*My Lord and my God!*" JOHN 20:28

Jesus Christ Is Treated like God Is

The fact that Christians relate to (or treat) Jesus Christ in ways in which they relate to God, reflects and supplements the teaching in the previous sections.

Jesus Christ is worshiped

And those in the boat worshiped him, saying, "Truly you are the Son of God." MATTHEW 14:33 ESV

The disciples worshiped Jesus as the Son of God.

People pray to Jesus Christ

They continued to stone Stephen while *he prayed, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit!"* ACTS 7:59

People obey and serve Jesus Christ

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit, ²⁰*teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.* MATTHEW 28:19–20A

From *James, a servant of God and of our Lord Jesus Christ.* JAMES 1:1A CEV

Jesus Christ Acts in Subordination to God

See also: *Epilogue: God Works through Jesus Christ*, p. 108

The concept of Jesus Christ being eternally subordinate to God is a historical doctrine that is still debated by Christian scholars.

Jesus Christ is described as being subordinate to God

[PAUL:] *God is the head of Christ.* 1 CORINTHIANS 11:3B

But when everything has been put under him, then *the Son himself will also become subject to the one who put everything under him, so that God may be all in all.* 1 CORINTHIANS 15:28 ISV

God is both Jesus Christ's God and his Father

'I am ascending *to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.*' JOHN 20:17B

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] I pray that *the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give you spiritual wisdom and revelation in your growing knowledge of him, ...* EPHESIANS 1:17

Jesus Christ is God's servant

[THE EARLY BELIEVERS, PRAYING TO GOD:] Stretch out your hand to heal, and grant that wonders and miracles may be performed through the name of *your holy Servant Jesus.* ACTS 4:30 GNT

4. The Holy Spirit

I. General

The Holy Spirit of God.....	42
The Holy Spirit's Being	43
The Holy Spirit's Personhood	44

II. God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit

Mutual Association.....	45
Mutual Divine Attributes	46
Mutual Divine Roles	47

I. General

See also: *II. God's Holy Spirit in His People*, p. 155

The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of God. This assertion is reflected by the Holy Spirit's divine and imposing attributes. However, the Bible also distinguishes the Holy Spirit from God, portraying him as a personal being in his own right.

The Holy Spirit of God

The Holy Spirit is the Spirit of God . . .

Now [in the beginning] the earth was without shape and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the watery deep, but *the Spirit of God* was moving over the surface of the water. [GENESIS 1:2](#)

The Holy Spirit is God's spirit. As such one should bear in mind that when the Bible speaks of the Holy Spirit, it is in effect speaking of God himself.

. . . Accordingly, God refers to the Holy Spirit as his Spirit

I will no longer hide my face from them, *when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel, declares the sovereign LORD.* [EZEKIEL 39:29](#)

The Holy Spirit is correlated with God's presence

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] Now *by this we know that God resides in us: by the Spirit he has given us.* [1 JOHN 3:24B](#)

This correlates the Holy Spirit with God's presence by asserting that believers having God's Spirit verifies that God lives in them.

God and the Holy Spirit know each other's mind

And *he* [God] *who searches our hearts knows the mind of the Spirit*, because the Spirit intercedes on behalf of the saints according to God's will. [ROMANS 8:27](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *No one knows the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God.* [1 CORINTHIANS 2:11B](#) NCV™

The Holy Spirit's Being

As well as being a spirit, the Holy Spirit is everywhere

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Where shall I go from your Spirit? Or where shall I flee from your presence? ⁸If I ascend to heaven, you are there! If I make my bed in Sheol, you are there!* PSALMS 139:7–8 ESV

Verse 7 links the Holy Spirit with God's presence, and so along with v. 8 implies that the Spirit is omnipresent – i.e. everywhere.

The Holy Spirit is eternal

How much more is done by the blood of Christ. He offered himself through *the eternal Spirit* as a perfect sacrifice to God.

HEBREWS 9:14A NCV™

The Holy Spirit has great power

And the Spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him [the Messiah], the Spirit of wisdom and understanding, *the Spirit of counsel and might*, the Spirit of knowledge and the fear of the LORD. ISAIAH 11:2 ESV

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] You are from God, little children, and have conquered them, because *the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world.* 1 JOHN 4:4

The “one who is in you” is most likely referring to the Holy Spirit. As such, the description of the Holy Spirit as greater than Satan – “the one who is in the world” – is indicative of the Spirit's great power.

The Holy Spirit has great knowledge

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] But the Advocate, *the Holy Spirit*, whom the Father will send in my name, *will teach you everything, and will cause you to remember everything I said to you.* JOHN 14:26

The Holy Spirit has great wisdom

But some men from the Synagogue of the Freedmen ... as well as some from Cilicia and the province of Asia, stood up and argued with Stephen. ¹⁰*Yet they were not able to resist the wisdom and the Spirit with which he spoke.* ACTS 6:9–10

This suggests that Stephen's profound wisdom was a product of the Holy Spirit – indicative of the Holy Spirit having great wisdom.

The Holy Spirit's Personhood

The Holy Spirit is distinguished from God and Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *There is one body and one Spirit*, just as you too were called to the one hope of your calling, ⁵*one Lord*, one faith, one baptism, ⁶*one God and Father of all*, who is over all and through all and in all. [EPHESIANS 4:4-6](#)

The Holy Spirit has his own mind

And he [God] who searches our hearts knows *the mind of the Spirit*, because the Spirit intercedes on behalf of the saints according to God's will. [ROMANS 8:27](#)

The Holy Spirit has personal characteristics

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Now I urge you, brothers and sisters, through our Lord Jesus Christ and through *the love of the Spirit*, to join fervently with me in prayer to God on my behalf. [ROMANS 15:30](#)

But *the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, ²³gentleness, and self-control*. [GALATIANS 5:22-23A](#)

Each of these characteristics is described as a "fruit of the Spirit" because – like fruit from a tree – their source and means of growth is the Holy Spirit. Arguably this implies that the Holy Spirit's own character is reflected in them.

The Holy Spirit communicates . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But *the Spirit himself speaks to God for us, even begs God for us* with deep feelings that words cannot explain. [ROMANS 8:26B NCV™](#)

. . . and the Holy Spirit interacts in other ways

The church became stronger, as *the Holy Spirit encouraged it and helped it grow*. [ACTS 9:31B CEV](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. [GALATIANS 5:18](#)

II. God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit

The NT speaks of God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit as three identities, but also shows them as being related to each other in a unique unity. This is in part due to divine attributes and roles being attributed to each of them. Since the 4th century the church has understood their relationship in terms of the *Doctrine of the Trinity* – the concept of them being three “persons” but one substance.

This close-knit relationship between God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit is still one of the most intriguing and debated aspects of the Bible. The following provides some basic “building blocks” for coming to terms with it.

Mutual Association

God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are closely associated

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in *the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit*, ... [MATTHEW 28:19](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all.*
[2 CORINTHIANS 13:14](#)

The Holy Spirit is identified with God

[PETER, TO ANANIAS:] *Why have you lied to the Holy Spirit? ...⁴ ... You lied to God!* [ACTS 5:3B, 4B CEV](#)

Ananias had attempted to deceive the church, and in effect had lied to the Holy Spirit. Peter indicates that to lie to the Holy Spirit (v. 3) is to lie to God (v. 4). As such he identifies the Holy Spirit with God.

The Holy Spirit is also identified with Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Now *the Lord is the Spirit*, and where the Spirit of the Lord is present, there is freedom.¹⁸ And we all, with unveiled faces reflecting the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from one degree of glory to another, which is from *the Lord, who is the Spirit.* [2 CORINTHIANS 3:17–18](#)

There are a number of interpretations of “the Lord is the Spirit” (v. 17) and “the Lord, who is the Spirit” (v. 18). The ones that are arguably the most plausible are compatible with a literal reading, demonstrating the very close association between the Lord Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

The Holy Spirit is called the Spirit of God and the Spirit of Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] You, however, are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if indeed *the Spirit of God* lives in you. Now if anyone does not have *the Spirit of Christ*, this person does not belong to him.

ROMANS 8:9

This not only closely correlates the Holy Spirit with God and with Jesus Christ, it also associates Jesus Christ with God, with the one Spirit being said to be of them both.

God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit work together

[PETER AND THE OTHER APOSTLES:] *God exalted him to his right hand as Leader and Savior, to give repentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins.* ³²*And we are witnesses of these events, and so is the Holy Spirit whom God has given to those who obey him.* ACTS 5:31–32

Verse 32 points to the Holy Spirit’s role in the salvation of people, witnessing to them. This work of the Holy Spirit is in conjunction with God’s will, and with what God has done through Jesus Christ (v. 31) to save people.

Mutual Divine Attributes

The listings here and in the following section of mutual divine attributes and roles are not comprehensive. Note that the subsections usually have three verses – of which the first refers to God, the second to Jesus Christ and the third to the Holy Spirit.

Omnipresence – God, Christ and the Holy Spirit are everywhere

“Do you not know that *I am everywhere*?” the LORD asks. JEREMIAH 23:24B
Christ did that to fill everything with his presence. EPHESIANS 4:10B NCV™

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Where can I go to get away from your Spirit? Where can I run from you?* PSALMS 139:7 NCV™

Omnipotence – they each have infinite, sovereign power

I know, LORD, that you are all-powerful; that you can do everything you want. JOB 42:2 GNT

Our Lord Jesus Christ ²¹has power over everything ... PHILIPPIANS 3:20B–21A CEV

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] You are from God, little children, and have conquered them, because *the one who is in you is greater than the one who is in the world.* 1 JOHN 4:4

Omniscience – they each have complete knowledge

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] If our conscience condemns us, we know that God is greater than our conscience and that *he knows everything.* 1 JOHN 3:20 GNT

[JESUS' DISCIPLES, TO JESUS:] Now *we know that you know everything and do not need anyone to ask you anything.* JOHN 16:30A

For the Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God. 1 CORINTHIANS 2:10B

The Holy Spirit searches out or finds out all things (cf. CEV, NCV, NLT).

Mutual Divine Roles

Common divine roles reflect the fact that God works through Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit are each ascribed a primary role in creation

But for us, “*There is only one God, the Father. Everything came from him, and we live for him. There is only one Lord, Jesus Christ. Everything came into being through him, and we live because of him.*” 1 CORINTHIANS 8:6 GW

[ELIHU:] *The Spirit of God has made me, and the breath of the Almighty gives me life.* JOB 33:4

They each give spiritual or eternal life

God has given us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. 1 JOHN 5:11B

For just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also *the Son gives life to whomever he wishes.* JOHN 5:21

The Spirit is the one who gives life; human nature is of no help!
JOHN 6:63A

They each make God's people holy

Obey my laws, because *I am the LORD and I make you holy.*
LEVITICUS 20:8 GNT

Husbands, love your wives just as *Christ loved the church and gave himself for her* ²⁶*to sanctify her by cleansing her with the washing of the water by the word,* ²⁷*so that he may present the church to himself as glorious – not having a stain or wrinkle, or any such blemish, but holy and blameless.* EPHESIANS 5:25–27

[PAUL:] I do this in order that I might bring the nations to God as an acceptable offering, *made holy by the Holy Spirit.* ROMANS 15:16B GW

Remember the persecuted

5. Angels, Satan and Demons

I. Angels

Attributes of Angels	50
Angels and God	51
Angels and God's People	52

II. Satan and Demons

Satan's Evilness.....	53
Satan's Power.....	53
Satan's Work against God's People.....	54
Demons.....	55

I. Angels

The Bible often mentions angels. The existence and role of these mighty servants of God should be a great encouragement to believers. This is in no small part due to the fact that their work often involves believers, including giving believers supernatural help.

Note that while the great majority of references to angels in the Bible are to God's holy angels, evil angels are also mentioned. These are commonly identified with demons. In headings in this book, "Angels" primarily refer to angels of God. But bear in mind that some concepts, such as angels being very powerful, are applicable to all angels.

Attributes of Angels

Angels have a human-like form, but are very awesome

[DANIEL, DESCRIBING A VISION:] *I looked up and saw a man clothed in linen; around his waist was a belt made of gold from Upaz.* ⁶*His body resembled yellow jasper, and his face had an appearance like lightning. His eyes were like blazing torches; his arms and feet had the gleam of polished bronze. His voice thundered forth like the sound of a large crowd.* DANIEL 10:5-6

This is describing an angel. The reference to the angel as a "man" and the mention of his human-like features (waist, face, eyes, arms and feet) suggest that angels have a human-like form.

Angels are very powerful

He will do this when the Lord Jesus appears from heaven with *his mighty angels*, ... 2 THESSALONIANS 1:7B GNT

Suddenly there was a severe earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descending from heaven came and rolled away the stone and sat on it. MATTHEW 28:2

The accompanying earthquake is indicative of the angel's awesome power. The stone was the very large one that had sealed Jesus' tomb.

Angels can communicate and interact with others

Suddenly an angel came to him [Elijah] and touched him. “Get up and eat,” the angel said. ⁶Elijah saw near his head a loaf baked over coals and a jar of water, so he ate and drank. Then he went back to sleep. ⁷Later the LORD’S angel came to him a second time. *The angel touched him and said, “Get up and eat. If you don’t, the journey will be too hard for you.”* [1 KINGS 19:5–7B](#) NCV™

Angels and God

Angels surround God, and even stand in his presence

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION OF A SCENE IN HEAVEN:] *Then I looked and heard the voice of many angels in a circle around the throne, as well as the living creatures and the elders.* [REVELATION 5:11A](#)

The angel answered him [Zechariah], “I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God ... [LUKE 1:19A](#)

Angels worship God and Jesus Christ

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION OF A SCENE IN HEAVEN:] The angels who stood around the throne knelt in front of it with their faces to the ground. The elders and the four living creatures knelt there with them. *Then they all worshiped God ¹²and said, “Amen! Praise, glory, wisdom, thanks, honor, power, and strength belong to our God forever and ever! Amen!”* [REVELATION 7:11–12](#) CEV

And when God brings *his firstborn Son* into the world, he says, *“Let all God’s angels worship him.”* [HEBREWS 1:6](#) NCV™

Angels serve God and Jesus Christ

Praise the LORD, *you angels of his, you powerful warriors who carry out his decrees and obey his orders!* ²¹*Praise the LORD, all you warriors of his, you servants of his who carry out his desires!* [PSALMS 103:20–21](#)

The Son of Man will send his angels, and they will gather from his kingdom everything that causes sin as well as all lawbreakers. [MATTHEW 13:41](#)

Angels and God's People

Angels help and care for God's people

What are all the angels? They are spirits sent to serve those who are going to receive salvation. [HEBREWS 1:14](#) GW

The LORD's angel camps around the LORD's loyal followers and delivers them. [PSALMS 34:7](#)

Angels give people messages, including instructions . . .

About three o'clock one afternoon *he saw clearly in a vision an angel of God who came in and said to him, "Cornelius."*⁴ Staring at him and becoming greatly afraid, Cornelius replied, "What is it, Lord?" The angel said to him, "Your prayers and your acts of charity have gone up as a memorial before God."⁵ *Now send men to Joppa and summon a man named Simon, who is called Peter.* [ACTS 10:3-5](#)

Note that the Hebrew and Greek words for "angel" carry the meaning "messenger".

. . . They also give messages about future events

[PAUL:] *For last night an angel of the God to whom I belong and whom I serve came to me*²⁴*and said, 'Do not be afraid, Paul! You must stand before Caesar, and God has graciously granted you the safety of all who are sailing with you.'* [ACTS 27:23-24](#)

The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave him to show to his servants the things that must soon take place. He made it known by sending his angel to his servant John, ... [REVELATION 1:1](#) ESV

Remember the persecuted

II. Satan and Demons

See also: *II. Spiritual Warfare*, p. 317

Many people find the existence of Satan (i.e. the devil) and demons disturbing and choose to avoid the subject. But to live the Christian life it is vital to understand our chief opponents. Moreover, the Bible has a lot to say about Satan and demons – much of which is in fact encouraging to believers.

Satan's Evilness

Satan is evil and is opposed to God's kingdom

When anyone hears the word about the kingdom and does not understand it, the evil one [Satan] comes and snatches what was sown in his heart; this is the seed sown along the path. [MATTHEW 13:19](#)

Satan is deceitful

[JESUS, TO THE JEWS:] You people are from your father the devil, and you want to do what your father desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, and *does not uphold the truth, because there is no truth in him. Whenever he lies, he speaks according to his own nature, because he is a liar and the father of lies.* [JOHN 8:44](#)

Satan's Power

Satan has great power and authority in the world

Then *the devil* led him up to a high place and showed him in a flash *all the kingdoms of the world.* ⁶*And he said to him, "To you I will grant this whole realm – and the glory that goes along with it, for it has been relinquished to me, and I can give it to anyone I wish.* [LUKE 4:5–6](#)

[JOHN:] ... *the whole world lies in the power of the evil one.* [1 JOHN 5:19B](#)

Satan works in and through unbelievers

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS IN EPHESUS:] Yes, in the past you lived the way the world lives, following the ruler of the evil powers that are above the

earth. *That same spirit* [Satan] *is now working in those who refuse to obey God.* [EPHESIANS 2:2](#) NCV™

And they [false teachers] may wake up and escape from *the trap of the devil, who catches them to do what he wants.* [2 TIMOTHY 2:26](#) NCV™

But, Satan is not as powerful as God, . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *The God of peace will quickly crush Satan under your feet.* [ROMANS 16:20A](#)

. . . nor is Satan as powerful as Jesus Christ

Now he was casting out a demon that was mute. When the demon had gone out, the man who had been mute began to speak, and the crowds were amazed. ... ²¹[JESUS:] *When a strong man, fully armed, guards his own palace, his possessions are safe. ²²But when a stronger man attacks and conquers him, he takes away the first man's armor on which the man relied and divides up his plunder.*

[LUKE 11:14, 21–22](#)

In v. 22 Jesus refers to his overpowering of Satan, stripping him of his power and taking what was his – a truth demonstrated by Jesus driving out demons (v. 14) and so releasing people from Satan's grip.

Moreover, Satan stands condemned

... the ruler of this world has been condemned. [JOHN 16:11B](#)

Satan's Work against God's People

Satan tempts God's people

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS IN THESSALONICA:] *So when I could bear it no longer, I sent to find out about your faith, for fear that the tempter somehow tempted you and our toil had proven useless.*

[1 THESSALONIANS 3:5](#)

Satan can afflict God's people

So Satan went out from the presence of the LORD, and he afflicted Job with a malignant ulcer from the sole of his feet to the top of his head.

[JOB 2:7](#)

[JESUS CHRIST, TO THE CHURCH IN SMYRNA:] Do not be afraid of the things you are about to suffer. *The devil is about to have some of you thrown into prison so you may be tested, and you will experience suffering for ten days.* REVELATION 2:10A

But Satan's influence is limited by God and Jesus Christ

[PAUL:] So that I would not become too proud of the wonderful things that were shown to me, *a painful physical problem was given to me. This problem was a messenger from Satan, sent to beat me and keep me from being too proud.*⁸ *I begged the Lord three times to take this problem away from me.*⁹ *But he said to me, "My grace is enough for you. When you are weak, my power is made perfect in you."* So I am very happy to brag about my weaknesses. Then Christ's power can live in me. 2 CORINTHIANS 12:7–9 NCV™

Paul's affliction apparently came from Satan. But Paul implies that Jesus Christ permitted it, using it both to keep Paul from becoming conceited (v. 7) and to make Paul receptive to Christ's power working in him. Thus this passage illustrates that God and Jesus Christ may permit Satan to afflict (or tempt) their people, but only in accordance with their purposes. As such his power and influence is limited by them.

Demons

Evil spiritual forces are referred to by a number of names, including "demons", "evil spirits", "spirits" and (evil) "angels". In order to be concise, generally only "Demons" (or "demons") has been used in this and the following subheadings.

Demons are evil and powerful spiritual beings

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world rulers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavens.*

EPHESIANS 6:12

The terms "rulers" and "powers" are indicative of the great – but limited – power of demons. The last two clauses appear to together refer to the whole of the spiritual realm.

Demons are aligned with Satan

Then war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon [Satan], and *the dragon and his angels fought back*. [REVELATION 12:7](#)

This illustrates that evil angels or demons are aligned with Satan.

Demons can possess people . . .

When he [Jesus] came to the other side, to the region of the Gadarenes, *two demon-possessed men* coming from the tombs met him. They were extremely violent, so that no one was able to pass by that way. [MATTHEW 8:28](#)

. . . and demons can cause such people much harm

[A FATHER OF A DEMON-POSSESSED BOY:] *A spirit seizes him, and he suddenly screams; it throws him into convulsions and causes him to foam at the mouth. It hardly ever leaves him alone, torturing him severely*. [LUKE 9:39](#)

Demons both fear and have to submit to God and Jesus Christ

You believe that God is one; well and good. Even the demons believe that – and tremble with fear. [JAMES 2:19](#)

But Jesus rebuked him [a demon-possessed man]: “*Silence! Come out of him!*”²⁶ *After throwing him into convulsions, the unclean spirit cried out with a loud voice and came out of him.*²⁷ They were all amazed so that they asked each other, “What is this? A new teaching with authority! *He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him.*” [MARK 1:25–27](#)

Demons face eternal punishment

Then he [Jesus Christ] will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me, you accursed, into *the eternal fire that has been prepared for the devil and his angels!*’ [MATTHEW 25:41](#)

Part B.

God and the World: Basics

6. God's Creation

I. General

God Made All Things	60
God Maintains Creation	60
How God Made and Maintains Creation.....	61
Implications of God Being Creator	62

II. God's Creation of People

Life and Death	63
The Human Spirit.....	63
The Uniqueness of People	64
Epilogue: God's Self-Revelation to People.....	65

I. General

The formation of the universe is the most astonishing thing that has ever occurred. The Bible claims that God not only created the universe, but that he also created everything in it. Moreover, it claims that God continues to maintain the universe. If we believe that God is capable of doing this, then we should have little trouble in accepting the other claims that the Bible makes about God.

God Made All Things

God made the heavens and earth – and everything in them

You are the only LORD. *You made the heavens, even the highest heavens, with all the stars. You made the earth and everything on it, the seas and everything in them; you give life to everything.* [NEHEMIAH 9:6A](#) NCV™

All that God made is very good

God saw all that he had made – and it was very good! [GENESIS 1:31A](#)

God Maintains Creation

Every creature's life is dependent on God

The life of every creature and the breath of all people are in God's hand. [JOB 12:10](#) NCV™

God provides food for all creatures

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Everything looks to you in anticipation, and you provide them with food on a regular basis.* [PSALMS 145:15](#)

God regulates all aspects of the weather

For to the snow he says, 'Fall to earth,' and to the torrential rains, 'Pour down.' [JOB 37:6](#)

He makes the clouds rise from the far-off horizons. He makes the lightning flash out in the midst of the rain. He unleashes the wind from the places where he stores it. [JEREMIAH 10:13B](#)

God maintains nature

[GOD:] *“While the earth continues to exist, planting time and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, and day and night will not cease.”*

GENESIS 8:22

God's promise that these things will continue is indicative of his control over them, regulating and maintaining them.

How God Made and Maintains Creation

God made all things with his wisdom

How numerous are your works, O LORD! In wisdom you have made them all; the earth is filled with your creations. PSALMS 104:24 ISV

The LORD created the earth by his wisdom; by his knowledge he set the sky in place. ²⁰His wisdom caused the rivers to flow and the clouds to give rain to the earth. PROVERBS 3:19–20 GNT

God made all things with his power

[GOD:] *I made the earth, its people, and all its animals with my great power and strength.* JEREMIAH 27:5A NCV™

God made all things by his word

By the word of God heaven was made, and the earth was made from water and with water. 2 PETER 3:5B NCV™

God made and sustains all things through Jesus Christ . . .

All things were created by him [Christ], and apart from him not one thing was created that has been created. JOHN 1:3

He is the one through whom God created the universe, the one whom God has chosen to possess all things at the end. ³He reflects the brightness of God's glory and is the exact likeness of God's own being, sustaining the universe with his powerful word.

HEBREWS 1:2B–3A GNT

. . . The Holy Spirit also has a role

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *When you send forth your Spirit, they [creatures] are created, and you renew the face of the ground.* PSALMS 104:30 ESV

Implications of God Being Creator

Because he made everything, all things belong to God

The heavens and the earth belong to you. And so does the world with all its people because you created them ¹²and everything else.

PSALMS 89:11–12A CEV

Because he made everything, God is sovereign over all things

The God who made the world and everything in it is the Lord of heaven and earth. ACTS 17:24A ISV

Because he has made all things, God has the right of sovereignty over all things. God's almighty power and incomparable wisdom enable him to enforce his sovereignty.

Creation shows God's power and wisdom to be incomparable

[JOB, SPEAKING OF GOD:] *He is wise in heart and mighty in strength – who has resisted him and remained safe? ⁵He who removes mountains suddenly, who overturns them in his anger; ⁶he who shakes the earth out of its place so that its pillars tremble; ⁷he who commands the sun and it does not shine and seals up the stars; ⁸he alone spreads out the heavens, and treads on the waves of the sea; ⁹he makes the Bear, Orion, and the Pleiades, and the constellations of the southern sky; ¹⁰he does great and unsearchable things, and wonderful things without number.* JOB 9:4–10

Remember the persecuted

II. God's Creation of People

Arguably the most significant part of God's creation is his creation of people. God not only gives people life and a spirit, he has made people quite unique amongst all creatures. Also, of all his creatures, it is primarily to people that God reveals himself and relates.

Life and Death

God creates people . . .

The rich and the poor are alike in that the LORD made them all.
 PROVERBS 22:2 NCV™

. . . God gives people life and breath

He gives life, breath, and everything else to all people. ACTS 17:25B CEV

People's lives are very brief

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *You made my life short, so brief that the time means nothing to you. "Human life is but a breath,⁶ and it disappears like a shadow.* PSALMS 39:5–6A CEV

As many old people would affirm, in a relative sense life is very brief.

Each person is destined to die

It is better to go to a funeral than a feast. For *death is the destiny of every person, and the living should take this to heart.* ECCLESIASTES 7:2

The Human Spirit

God has made people with a spirit

The LORD – who spread out the heavens, laid the foundation of the earth, and *forms the spirit in a person* – says, ... ZECHARIAH 12:1B GW

The spirit is at the core of one's being

A person's spirit is the lamp of the LORD; it searches through all of one's innermost being. PROVERBS 20:27 ISV

People are dead without their spirit

For just as *the body without the spirit is dead*, so also faith without works is dead. [JAMES 2:26](#)

People's spirits exist after death

They [Jews] continued to stone Stephen while he prayed, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit!" [ACTS 7:59](#)

Here also are the spirits of those good people who have been made perfect. [HEBREWS 12:23B CEV](#)

The reference is to the spirits of righteous people who had died.

The Uniqueness of People

God has made people in his own image

Then God said, "Let us make humankind in our image, after our likeness, so they may rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move on the earth." ²⁷God created humankind in his own image, in the image of God he created them, male and female he created them. [GENESIS 1:26–27](#)

That God has made people in his own image is evident in that they reflect such things as his personal traits – e.g. aspects of his character and intellect – and that they have a spirit. Additionally, it is noteworthy that although God essentially is spirit, some descriptions of visions or manifestations of God speak of him in terms of a human-like form (cf. Ezekiel 1:26–28; Daniel 7:9).

God has given people an able mind – with which they can think and reason intelligently

Who has put wisdom in the heart, or has imparted understanding to the mind? [JOB 38:36](#)

And Paul went in, as was his custom, and on three Sabbath days *he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, ³explaining and proving that it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise from the dead, and saying, "This Jesus, whom I proclaim to you, is the Christ."*

[ACTS 17:2–3 ESV](#)

People have the moral capacity to know good from evil

And the LORD God said, “Now that *the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil*, he must not be allowed to stretch out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever.”

GENESIS 3:22

People are to care for and act responsibly towards creation

A righteous person cares for the life of his animal ... PROVERBS 12:10A

[GOD, TO THE BABYLONIANS:] *For you will pay in full for your violent acts against Lebanon; terrifying judgment will come upon you because of the way you destroyed the wild animals living there.*

HABAKKUK 2:17A

The Babylonians' desolation of the forests of Lebanon (cf. CEV, GNT, NLT) and their destruction of animals contravened humankind's responsibility towards nature – and they would be punished for it.

Epilogue: God's Self-Revelation to People

God reveals himself to people

Then the LORD again appeared in Shiloh, for it was in Shiloh that *the LORD had revealed himself to Samuel through the word of the LORD.* 1 SAMUEL 3:21

God reveals himself by what he does

[GOD:] I acted for the sake of my reputation, so that I would not be profaned before *the nations among whom they lived, before whom I revealed myself by bringing them out of the land of Egypt.* EZEKIEL 20:9

By delivering the Israelites out of Egypt, God revealed himself to the surrounding peoples.

Creation perpetually evidences and reveals God to all people

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF WICKED PEOPLE:] *For what can be known about God is plain to them, because God has shown it to them.* ²⁰*For his invisible attributes, namely, his eternal power and divine nature, have been clearly perceived, ever since the creation of the world, in the things that have been made.* So they are without excuse. ROMANS 1:19–20 ESV

7. God's Sovereignty

I. God's Supreme Authority

The LORD Is God – the Only God	68
God Reigns Supreme	69
God Defeats His Enemies	70
God Fulfills His Plans.....	70

II. God's Control over the World

God Has Control over Evil.....	71
God Has Control over Nature.....	71
God Has Control over the Nations	72
God Has Control over Each Person	73

I. God's Supreme Authority

As the one and only God, God reigns supreme in the world. He has supreme power over all things. As such, God defeats his enemies and he fulfills his plans. A realization of this produces submission to and worship of the one and only God.

The LORD Is God – the Only God

Note that God stated that the "LORD" was the name by which he was to be known (cf. Exodus 3:12–15).

The LORD is God

Know that the LORD is God. PSALMS 100:3A NCV™

Now, O sovereign LORD, you are the true God! 2 SAMUEL 7:28A

He is God of all people

I am the LORD, the God of all humankind. JEREMIAH 32:27A

Hezekiah prayed before the LORD: "LORD God of Israel, who is enthroned on the cherubs! *You alone are God over all the kingdoms of the earth.*" 2 KINGS 19:15A

He is the one and only God

[GOD:] *And there is no other god besides me, a righteous God and a Savior; there is none besides me.* ²²"Turn to me and be saved, all the ends of the earth! *For I am God, and there is no other.* ISAIAH 45:21B–22 ESV

His deeds show that he is the only God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *For you are great and do amazing things. You alone are God.* PSALMS 86:10

[GOD:] *See, I am the only God. There are no others. I kill, and I make alive. I wound, and I heal, and no one can rescue you from my power.* DEUTERONOMY 32:39 GW

God Reigns Supreme

God rules over all

O LORD, you are great, mighty, majestic, magnificent, glorious, and *sovereign over all the sky and earth! You have dominion and exalt yourself as the ruler of all.* ¹²You are the source of wealth and honor; *you rule over all.* You possess strength and might to magnify and give strength to all. [1 CHRONICLES 29:11–12](#)

As such, God rules over all authorities

The glorious God is the only Ruler, *the King of kings and Lord of lords.* [1 TIMOTHY 6:15A CEV](#)

God rules over the earth in righteousness

He rules the world with righteousness; he judges the nations with justice. [PSALMS 9:8 GNT](#)

God will reign forever

But you, O LORD, *reign forever; your throne endures from generation to generation.* [LAMENTATIONS 5:19](#)

God will impose his absolute rule on all

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION:] Then the seventh angel blew his trumpet, and there were loud voices in heaven saying: *“The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will reign for ever and ever.”* ¹⁶Then the twenty-four elders who are seated on their thrones before God threw themselves down with their faces to the ground and worshiped God ¹⁷with these words: *“We give you thanks, Lord God, the All-Powerful, the one who is and who was, because you have taken your great power and begun to reign.* [REVELATION 11:15–17](#)

The proclamation in v. 15 and the final phrase “have begun to reign” (v. 17) may mean that at this point God has begun to impose his rule on all – the actualization of the kingdom (v. 15) implemented with the imposition of God’s great power (v. 17). Alternatively the past tense may be used here to indicate the certainty of God doing so in the future.

God Defeats His Enemies

No one can effectively oppose God

But *he alone is God, and who can oppose him? God does as he pleases, ...* [JOB 23:13 CEV](#)

[GOD:] *For there is no one like me, and there is no one who can call me to account. There is no ruler who can stand up against me.*

[JEREMIAH 49:19B](#)

God destroys his enemies

But *he will pay back those people who hate him. He will destroy them, and he will not be slow to pay back those who hate him.*

[DEUTERONOMY 7:10 NCV™](#)

God Fulfills His Plans

God carries out his plans

[GOD:] *“Be sure of this: Just as I have intended, so it will be; just as I have planned, it will happen.* [ISAIAH 14:24B](#)

God does not change his plans

God is not a human being, and he will not lie. He is not a human, and *he does not change his mind. What he says he will do, he does. What he promises, he makes come true.* [NUMBERS 23:19 NCV™](#)

No one can thwart God’s plans

Indeed, *the LORD who commands armies has a plan, and who can possibly frustrate it? His hand is ready to strike, and who can possibly stop it?* [ISAIAH 14:27](#)

God works everything for his plans

In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of *him who works all things according to the counsel of his will, ...* [EPHESIANS 1:11 ESV](#)

God works all things that occur for the fulfillment of his plans.

II. God's Control over the World

God has power over everything. This includes control over evil powers, nature, the nations of the world and each person's life. Comprehending this is vital to having a sound understanding of God and of his relationship to the world – including his relationship with ourselves.

God Has Control over Evil

God exerts control over evil

[JACOB, REFERRING TO HIS GREEDY UNCLE:] Yet he has cheated me and changed my wages ten times. *But God did not let him harm me.*

GENESIS 31:7 GNT

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] No temptation has overtaken you that is unusual for human beings. *But God is faithful, and he will not allow you to be tempted beyond your strength. Instead, along with the temptation he will also provide a way out, so that you may be able to endure it.* 1 CORINTHIANS 10:13 ISV

God has control over any temptation, whether it originates from Satan or our own sinful nature. This is indicative of his control over evil.

God even uses evil to fulfill his purposes

For God has put into their minds to carry out his purpose by making a decision to give their royal power to the beast until the words of God are fulfilled. REVELATION 17:17

This speaks of kings or powers of the end times cooperating with the beast or anti-Christ, to unwittingly accomplish God's purpose.

God Has Control over Nature

God directs nature

He loads the clouds with moisture; he scatters his lightning through the clouds. ¹²*The clouds go round in circles, wheeling about according*

to his plans, to carry out all that he commands them over the face of the whole inhabited world. [JOB 37:11–12](#)

He sends his command through the earth; swiftly his order reaches its destination. ¹⁶He sends the snow that is white like wool; he spreads the frost that is white like ashes. ¹⁷He throws his hailstones like crumbs. Who can withstand the cold wind he sends? ¹⁸He then orders it all to melt; he breathes on it, and the water flows. [PSALMS 147:15–18](#)

God can perform miracles of nature

The LORD’s angelic messenger appeared to the woman and said to her, “You are infertile and childless, but you will conceive and have a son. ...” ²⁴Manoah’s wife gave birth to a son and named him Samson. [JUDGES 13:3, 24A](#)

[ELIJAH:] For this is what the LORD God of Israel says, “The jar of flour [that was about to run out] will not be empty and the jug of oil will not run out until the day the LORD makes it rain on the surface of the ground.” ¹⁵She [a widow] went and did as Elijah told her; there was always enough food for Elijah and for her and her family. ¹⁶The jar of flour was never empty and the jug of oil never ran out, just as the LORD had promised through Elijah. [1 KINGS 17:14–16](#)

God Has Control over the Nations

God is in control of the nations

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] For you execute justice among the nations, and govern the people living on earth. (Selah) [PSALMS 67:4B](#)

[GOD:] This is the plan I have devised for the whole earth; my hand is ready to strike all the nations.” [Isaiah:] ²⁷Indeed, the LORD who commands armies has a plan, and who can possibly frustrate it? His hand is ready to strike, and who can possibly stop it? [ISAIAH 14:26–27](#)

What God determines for the whole world does take place, for his power to impose his will extends over all nations. For God “controls every nation” (CEV) – none can prevent him from implementing his purposes concerning them.

God has been in control of the nations throughout history

From one human being he created all races on earth and made them live throughout the whole earth. He himself fixed beforehand the exact times and the limits of the places where they would live. ACTS 17:26 GNT

God establishes all ruling authorities

Let every person be subject to *the governing authorities*. For *there is no authority except by God's appointment, and the authorities that exist have been instituted by God.* ROMANS 13:1

God Has Control over Each Person

God has control over people's hearts and minds

When Saul turned to leave Samuel, God changed Saul's heart.
1 SAMUEL 10:9A NCV™

The LORD caused the Egyptians to think well of them, and the Egyptians gave the people everything they asked for. So the Israelites took rich gifts from them. EXODUS 12:36 NCV™

God has control over people's actions . . .

[DANIEL, TO KING BELSHAZZAR:] *But you have not glorified the God who has in his control your very breath and all your ways!* DANIEL 5:23B

. . . Despite people's plans, their steps are directed by God

A person plans his course, but the LORD directs his steps. PROVERBS 16:9

God controls all that happens to people

Is it not from the mouth of the Most High that everything comes – both calamity and blessing? LAMENTATIONS 3:38

[A WISE TEACHER:] *In times of prosperity be joyful, but in times of adversity consider this: God has made one as well as the other, so that no one can discover what the future holds.* ECCLESIASTES 7:14

8. God's Word

I. General

What God's Word Comprises	76
Characteristics of God's Word.....	77
Functions of God's Word.....	78

II. Key Old Testament Covenants

God's Covenant with Abraham	79
God's Covenant with Israel and the Law	80
God's Dealings and Covenant with David	82

I. General

God's word is our window to God. For through it we learn about God and his relationship with us. Moreover, its unique characteristics and functions have the imprint of God.

What God's Word Comprises

God's word primarily is Scripture

If he [God] called them gods to whom *the word of God* came—and *Scripture* cannot be broken— ... [JOHN 10:35](#) ESV

This speaks of Scripture as "the word of God".

Every Scripture passage is inspired by God. [2 TIMOTHY 3:16A](#) GW

Here Paul is effectively saying that every verse of Scripture comes from God, i.e. Scripture "is God's Word" (CEV).

God's word includes his covenants

The LORD said to Moses, "Write these words down, because it is on the basis of these words that I am making a covenant with you and with Israel." ²⁸... He wrote on the tablets *the words of the covenant*—the Ten Commandments. [EXODUS 34:27, 28B](#) GNT

This speaks of words of God forming God's covenant with Israel.

God's word includes his laws

[A PSALMIST, REFERRING TO GOD:] *He speaks his word to Jacob, his laws and judicial decisions to Israel.* [PSALMS 147:19](#) GW

God's word includes his prophecies

[GOD, TO JEREMIAH:] *Get a scroll. Write on it everything I have told you to say about Israel, Judah, and all the other nations since I began to speak to you in the reign of Josiah until now.* [JEREMIAH 36:2](#)

This refers to prophecies (of God's word) regarding nations.

God's word also includes the gospel, proclaimed by his people

When they [Barnabas and Saul] arrived in Salamis, *they began to proclaim the word of God in the Jewish synagogues.* [ACTS 13:5A](#)

Jesus Christ is “the Word of God”

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION OF CHRIST:] He is dressed in clothing dipped in blood, and *he is called the Word of God*. [REVELATION 19:13](#)

Jesus Christ is called the “Word of God” in part because much of what God says and does, he says and does through Jesus Christ.

Note: God has given his word by the Holy Spirit

Above all, you do well if you recognize this: *No prophecy of scripture ever comes about by the prophet's own imagination, ²¹for no prophecy was ever borne of human impulse; rather, men carried along by the Holy Spirit spoke from God*. [2 PETER 1:20–21](#)

Characteristics of God's Word

God's word is holy, righteous and good

So then, *the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, righteous, and good*. [ROMANS 7:12](#)

God's word is true . . .

The words of the LORD are true and all his works are dependable. [PSALMS 33:4 GNT](#)

[JESUS, TO GOD:] Set them apart in the truth; *your word is truth*. [JOHN 17:17](#)

. . . and so what God's word foretells comes true

[JEREMIAH TO JERUSALEM'S PEOPLE:] *The LORD has done what he purposed; he has carried out his word, which he commanded long ago; he has thrown down without pity; he has made the enemy rejoice over you and exalted the might of your foes*. [LAMENTATIONS 2:17 GW](#)

God's word is living and active

For *the word of God is living and active* ... [HEBREWS 4:12A](#)

Two reasons for describing God's word as “living” are that it never ceases to be pertinent and it keeps on influencing and affecting people. The latter reason also shows it to be active.

God's word is powerful

What God has said isn't only alive and active! It is sharper than any double-edged sword. His word can cut through our spirits and souls and through our joints and marrow, until it discovers the desires and thoughts of our hearts. HEBREWS 4:12 CEV

God's word can penetrate to the very depths of our inner-selves, exposing our thoughts and attitudes for what they really are.

God's word is everlasting

For all flesh is like grass and all its glory like the flower of the grass; the grass withers and the flower falls off, ²⁵but *the word of the Lord endures forever.* 1 PETER 1:24–25A

Functions of God's Word

God's word brings spiritual and eternal life

[JESUS:] The Spirit is the one who gives life; human nature is of no help! *The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life. ...*
⁶⁸Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom would we go? *You have the words of eternal life.* JOHN 6:63, 68

In v. 63b Jesus appears to be saying that his words are spiritual, producing spiritual or eternal life. Jesus seems to be implying that it is by the Holy Spirit (v. 63a) that his words produce this life.

God's word gives light

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *Your word is a lamp to walk by, and a light to illumine my path.* PSALMS 119:105

God's word gives "light" – guidance and spiritual insight.

God's word gives hope

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *Remember your word to your servant, for you have given me hope.* PSALMS 119:49

God had given the psalmist hope by his word, or promise.

God's word gives joy

The LORD's precepts are fair and make one joyful. PSALMS 19:8A

II. Key Old Testament Covenants

A covenant is a solemn agreement between two parties. As indicated earlier, God's covenants are a key aspect of his word – along with his commands, prophecies and promises.

God's covenants with people were all initiated by God. They generally confirmed his relationship with the persons concerned – who were or who became his people. The covenants included binding promises by God of blessings for his people, reflecting his purposes for them. In some cases God's covenants also outlined what God required of his people and how they were to relate to him.

God's covenants with Abraham, Israel and David are prime instances of the role of God's word. They expound pivotal promises and (in the covenant with Israel) laws of God. They also form the background of God's relationship with his people today. Learning about them enables us to better understand the significance of much of the NT's teachings.

God's Covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abraham, promising him: countless descendants; the land of Canaan; . . .

Abram bowed down with his face to the ground, and God said to him, ⁴“As for me, this is my covenant with you: You will be the father of a multitude of nations. ⁵No longer will your name be Abram. Instead, your name will be Abraham because I will make you the father of a multitude of nations. ⁶I will make you extremely fruitful. I will make nations of you, and kings will descend from you. ⁷I will confirm my covenant as a perpetual covenant between me and you. It will extend to your descendants after you throughout their generations. I will be your God and the God of your descendants after you. ⁸I will give the whole land of Canaan – the land where you are now residing – to you and your descendants after you as a permanent possession. I will be their God.” GENESIS 17:3–8

God made an everlasting covenant with the Israelite's ancestor Abraham, aspects of which were included in God's later covenant

with Israel. In the covenant God promised Abraham that if he obeyed, God would: give him numerous descendants (vv. 5–7); give his descendants the land of Canaan (v. 8); and bless all nations through him (as per the following subsection). In conjunction with this, God would be Abraham’s and his descendants’ God (v. 7).

. . . and that all peoples would be blessed through Abraham

[GOD, TO ABRAHAM:] I will bless those who bless you, and him who dishonors you I will curse, and *in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed.* GENESIS 12:3 ESV

Abraham believed God, and was accredited with righteousness

[GOD, TO ABRAHAM:] “Look toward heaven, and number the stars, if you are able to number them.” *Then he said to him, “So shall your offspring be.”*⁶ *And he believed the LORD, and he counted it to him as righteousness.* GENESIS 15:5B–6 ESV

God’s Covenant with Israel and the Law

See also: *I. Jesus Christ and the Law’s Diminished Role*, p. 126

God made a covenant with Israel, based on his law

*The LORD said to Moses, “Write down these words, for in accordance with these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel.”*²⁸ *So he was there with the LORD forty days and forty nights; he did not eat bread, and he did not drink water. He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the ten commandments.* EXODUS 34:27–28

If the Israelites obeyed God, then they would be his people and he would be their God

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *Obey me and carry out the terms of the agreement exactly as I commanded you. If you do, you will be my people and I will be your God.* JEREMIAH 11:4B

According to the terms of the covenant, Israel was to obey God. If Israel kept the covenant by obeying God’s commands, then under the covenant they would be God’s people and he would be their God.

Laws for the people's relationship with God

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *"You shall have no other gods besides me.* ⁴*"You shall not make for yourselves an idol, or any likeness of what is in heaven above, or on earth below, or in the water under the earth.* ⁵*You shall not bow down to them in worship or serve them; because I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, punishing the children for the iniquity of the parents, to the third and fourth generations of those who hate me, ⁶but showing gracious love to thousands who love me and keep my commandments.* ⁷*You shall not misuse the name of the LORD your God, because the LORD will not leave the one who misuses his name unpunished.* ⁸*Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy.* ⁹*Six days you shall labor and do all your work, ¹⁰but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. And you shall not do any work, neither you, nor your son, nor your daughter, nor your male or female servants, nor your livestock, nor the alien who is within your gates.* ¹¹*For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth and the sea, and all that is in them, and he rested on the seventh day. Therefore, the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy.* EXODUS 20:2–11 ISV

The commands in this and the following section are the Ten Commandments. These form the fundamentals of the whole law that God gave through Moses (referred to as the Mosaic Law).

Laws for relationships with other people

"Honor your father and your mother, that you may live a long time in the land the LORD your God is giving to you. ¹³*"You shall not murder.* ¹⁴*"You shall not commit adultery.* ¹⁵*"You shall not steal.* ¹⁶*"You shall not give false testimony against your neighbor.* ¹⁷*"You shall not covet your neighbor's house. You shall not covet your neighbor's wife, nor his male servant, nor his female servant, nor his ox, nor his donkey, nor anything that belongs to your neighbor."* EXODUS 20:12–17

By obeying all the law, the Israelites would have righteousness

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *It will be righteousness for us, if we're careful to obey all the law before the LORD our God, as he commanded.* DEUTERONOMY 6:25 ISV

God's Dealings and Covenant with David

David was chosen by God, as ruler over Israel

[GOD:] *I've chosen David to rule my people Israel.* 1 KINGS 8:16B GW

David reigned over Israel, as a powerful and righteous king – undergirded by God

David became a great and strong ruler, because the LORD All-Powerful was on his side. ... ¹²*David knew that the LORD had made him king of Israel and that he had made him a powerful ruler for the good of his people.* 2 SAMUEL 5:10, 12 CEV

David was king over all Israel, and he did what was fair and right for all his people. 2 SAMUEL 8:15 NCV™

God's covenant with David, promising that David's royal dynasty would last forever

[THE PROPHET NATHAN, TO DAVID:] *The LORD declares to you that he himself will build a dynastic house for you.* ¹²*When the time comes for you to die, I [God] will raise up your descendant, one of your own sons, to succeed you, and I will establish his kingdom.* ¹³*He will build a house for my name, and I will make his dynasty permanent.* ¹⁴*I will become his father and he will become my son. When he sins, I will correct him with the rod of men and with wounds inflicted by human beings.* ¹⁵*But my loyal love will not be removed from him as I removed it from Saul, whom I removed from before you.* ¹⁶*Your house and your kingdom will stand before me permanently; your dynasty will be permanent.* 2 SAMUEL 7:11B–16

In vv. 11b, 16 “house” refers to a royal dynasty that God would build for David, in response to David’s desire to build a “house” (v. 13) or temple for God. The “descendant” spoken of in vv. 12–15 refers initially to David’s son Solomon, but is generally understood to ultimately speak of the Messiah. As such this covenant provided the people of Israel with the hope of a permanently secure kingdom (cf. vv. 10–11a) under a godly and powerful king.

9. The Problem of Sin

I. General

Sin Is Breaking God's Law	84
Sin Is against God	84
Sin Is Universal	85
Sin Has Intrinsic Ill Effects	85
Sin Brings God's Anger and Death	86

II. The Law's Provision for Israel's Sin

Offerings for Atonement for Sinners	87
The Blood of the Offerings	88
The Role of the Priests	89

I. General

Knowing what sin is and what its consequences are is vital to understanding God's relationship with humankind and to appreciating the need for Jesus Christ's mission. It also helps us not to sin by: clarifying what sin is (which this chapter does in general terms); and providing great motivation to avoid sin.

Sin Is Breaking God's Law

Breaking God's law is sin

Whoever sins is guilty of breaking God's law, because sin is a breaking of the law. 1 JOHN 3:4 GNT

As such, all wrongdoing is sin . . .

Doing wrong is always sin ... 1 JOHN 5:17A NCV™

. . . and not doing what we should do is sin

So whoever knows what is good to do and does not do it is guilty of sin. JAMES 4:17

Sin Is against God

Sin is action against God

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *If anyone sins unintentionally by breaking any of the LORD's commands, he is guilty and must pay the penalty. ...* ¹⁹*It is a repayment offering for the sin he committed against the LORD.* LEVITICUS 5:17, 19 GNT

Sin is rebellion against God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Drive them out of your presence because of their many sins and their rebellion against you.* PSALMS 5:10B GNT

Thus, sin is hated by God

For I, the LORD, love justice and hate robbery and sin. ISAIAH 61:8A

Sin Is Universal

All people have sinned . . .

All of us have sinned and fallen short of God's glory. ROMANS 3:23 CEV

All fail to measure up to a standard compatible with God's glory.

. . . No one is righteous before God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Do not enter into judgment with your servant, for no living person is righteous in your sight.* PSALMS 143:2 ISV

People in fact have a sinful nature

And those who belong to Christ Jesus have put to death *their human nature with all its passions and desires.* GALATIANS 5:24 GNT

Sin Has Intrinsic III Effects

Sin brings spiritual defilement

They became filthy because of what they did. PSALMS 106:39 GW

Sin results in separation from God

[ISAIAH, TO THE PEOPLE OF JUDAH:] *But your sinful acts have alienated you from your God; your sins have caused him to reject you and not listen to your prayers.* ISAIAH 59:2

Sin brings spiritual death

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *When you were spiritually dead because of your sins and because you were not free from the power of your sinful self, God made you alive with Christ, and he forgave all our sins.* COLOSSIANS 2:13 NCV™

Spiritual death involves being cut off from God – “dead to God” – without his Holy Spirit, who brings spiritual life.

Sin also brings enslavement to sin

Jesus answered them, “I tell you the solemn truth, *everyone who practices sin is a slave of sin.* JOHN 8:34

Sin Brings God's Anger and Death

Sin makes one subject to God's anger

Actually *all of us were like them and lived according to our natural desires, doing whatever suited the wishes of our own bodies and minds*. In our natural condition we, like everyone else, were destined to suffer God's anger. [EPHESIANS 2:3 GNT](#)

Here Paul refers to how all people have lived sinful lives, making them subject to God's anger.

Sin results in physical death

Therefore, just as *sin entered the world through one man [Adam], and death through sin, so death spread to everyone, because all have sinned*. [ROMANS 5:12 ISV](#)

People may experience God's wrath and judgment for sin in various forms during their lifetime, but common to all is the judgment of physical death. Note that the verse makes reference to death initially coming as a consequence of Adam's original sin.

Furthermore, sin brings the prospect of eternal "death"

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] So what benefit did you then reap from those things that you are now ashamed of? For *the end of those things is death*. ... ²³*For the payoff of sin is death*, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord. [ROMANS 6:21, 23](#)

Particularly in view of the contrast with "eternal life" (v. 23), "death" (vv. 21, 23) appears to primarily refer to or at least encompass what is sometimes referred to as eternal "death". Because of his justice God demands that unforgiven sin be punished with eternal "death" or destruction, involving eternal separation from God in hell. A complementary reason for this "death" is that sin makes separation from God necessary, because of his holiness.

II. The Law's Provision for Israel's Sin

See also: *1. Jesus Christ and the Law's Diminished Role*, p. 126

In the law on which his covenant with Israel was based, God made provision for atonement to be made for anyone who sinned, and so for the sinner to be forgiven. This allowed the Israelites to remain in their covenant relationship with him, providing that they did not actually give up following God and his laws, as per the terms of the covenant.

The NT contains numerous references to the Mosaic Law's provision for Israel's sin. An understanding of what this provision involved enables us to more fully comprehend why Jesus Christ came and the significance of his work. For many of the concepts involved in Jesus Christ's work have their origin in the law's stipulations for making offerings for atonement for sin. These aspects of the law actually foreshadowed – and would be superseded by – what Jesus Christ would do and implement.

Offerings for Atonement for Sinners

An animal was offered to make atonement for one who sinned

If any person sins unintentionally, then he must bring a yearling female goat for a purification offering. ²⁸And the priest must make atonement for the person who sins unintentionally — when he sins unintentionally before the LORD — to make atonement for him, and he will be forgiven. NUMBERS 15:27–28

If a person sinned they brought an animal for a priest to sacrifice to make atonement for them. Atonement is where God accepts such an offering of a living being as a substitute for the life of a person who has sinned – the person's life otherwise being required as punishment. As such, God accepts the sacrifice as payment for the person's sin. The result is that sin is taken away – and so the sinner is forgiven, pronounced righteous and reconciled to God.

Animals brought as offerings were to be without defect

If this person [who had sinned] brings a lamb as his offering for sin, he must bring a female that has nothing wrong with it. LEVITICUS 4:32 NCV™

The sinner laid hands on the offering, signifying it as a substitute

He must lay his hand on the head of the burnt offering, and it will be accepted for him to make atonement on his behalf. LEVITICUS 1:4

This practice appears to have signified that the animal was a substitute for the sinner. Moreover, it may also have signified the transfer of the person's sins to the animal (cf. Leviticus 16:21–22).

The Blood of the Offerings

The blood of the offerings for sin featured in making atonement

Then *the high priest must bring some of the blood of the bull to the Meeting Tent,*¹⁷*and that priest must dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle some of the blood seven times before the LORD toward the front of the veil-canopy.*¹⁸*He must put some of the blood on the horns of the altar which is before the LORD in the Meeting Tent, and all the rest of the blood he must pour out at the base of the altar of burnt offering that is at the entrance of the Meeting Tent.*¹⁹“Then the priest must take all its fat and offer the fat up in smoke on the altar.²⁰He must do with the rest of the bull just as he did with the bull of the sin offering; this is what he must do with it. *So the priest will make atonement on their behalf and they will be forgiven.*

LEVITICUS 4:16–20

As this passage illustrates, the blood of animals sacrificed as offerings to make atonement for sinners featured prominently in the instructions given for presenting the offerings. The reason was the correlation of blood with life (as discussed in the following subsection). The blood signified the life of the animal, given as a substitute for the life of the sinner (as reflected in the previous subsection).

For the life of a creature is in its blood

[GOD:] ... *for the life of every living thing is in the blood. So I myself have assigned it to you on the altar to make atonement for your lives, for the blood makes atonement by means of the life.* LEVITICUS 17:11

Blood sustains life and so is often correlated with life.

The Role of the Priests

God designated Aaron and his descendants as priests

[GOD, TO MOSES:] And you, *bring near to you your brother Aaron and his sons with him from among the Israelites, so that they may minister as my priests – Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron’s sons.* [EXODUS 28:1](#)

[GOD, TO MOSES:] *And the priesthood shall be theirs by a statute forever.* Thus you shall ordain Aaron and his sons. [EXODUS 29:9B](#) ESV

When God made his covenant with Israel, he instituted the Aaronic or Levitical priesthood as an integral aspect of the covenant law, in particular in regard to the regulations concerning the people’s relationship with himself.

The priests made the offerings for people when they sinned, to make atonement for them

And the priest shall make atonement for him [a person who had sinned] *with the ram of the guilt offering before the LORD for his sin that he has committed,* and he shall be forgiven for the sin that he has committed. [LEVITICUS 19:22](#) ESV

The high priest made atonement yearly for Israel as a whole

“The priest who is anointed and ordained to act as high priest in place of his father is to make atonement. He is to put on the linen garments, the holy garments,³³ and he is to purify the Most Holy Place, he is to purify the Meeting Tent and the altar, and he is to make atonement for the priests and for all the people of the assembly.³⁴ This is to be a perpetual statute for you to make atonement for the Israelites for all their sins once a year.” [LEVITICUS 16:32–34A](#)

The Day of Atonement was to be observed once each year, for the high priest to cleanse the nation as a whole of all sin. It was the most important observance of the OT rituals, the only time the high priest could enter the Most Holy Place.

Note that the Most Holy Place was where the ark of the covenant was kept. The ark was a box-like structure which contained the stone tablets on which were written the Ten Commandments, the

basis of God's covenant with Israel. The ark signified God's presence amongst the Israelites.

However, Israel did not keep God's law and broke his covenant

Samaria [the capital city of northern Israel] fell because *the Israelites did not obey the LORD their God, but broke the covenant he had made with them and disobeyed all the laws given by Moses, the servant of the LORD. They would not listen and they would not obey.* 2 KINGS 18:12 GNT

Despite the law's provision for Israel's sin, the Israelites as a whole persisted in sin – rebelling against God and breaking his covenant with them. This showed that ultimately the law was not sufficient to deal with sin.

Remember the persecuted

10. God's Judgment

I. Basics

God Is the Judge of the World.....	92
Reasons for God's Judgment.....	92
God's Judgment Is Just.....	93

II. The Manifestation of God's Judgment

Means of God's Judicial Retribution.....	95
Characteristics of God's Judicial Retribution.....	96
The Wicked and God's Pending Judgment.....	97
God's Judgment of Israel – and His Mercy.....	98

I. Basics

The fact that God does and will judge us is one of the Bible's key teachings, without which the significance of other key Bible teachings is lost – notably that of salvation. An understanding of it is also vital to understanding God himself. Additionally, bear in mind that God's judgment – being just and righteous – actually gives his people much reason to be encouraged.

God Is the Judge of the World

God is judge – of the whole earth

The heavens declare his fairness, for *God is judge*. [PSALMS 50:6](#)

[ABRAHAM, TO GOD:] *You are the judge of all the earth ...* [GENESIS 18:25B CEV](#)

As such, God makes judgments in the world

He is the LORD our God; *he carries out judgment throughout the earth*. [1 CHRONICLES 16:14](#)

God makes himself known by his judgment

[GOD, TO THE PEOPLE OF EDMON:] I will deal with you according to your anger, and according to your envy, by which you acted spitefully against them [the people of Israel]. *I will reveal myself to them when I judge you*. [EZEKIEL 35:11B](#)

Reasons for God's Judgment

God's judgment is to punish sin and unfaithfulness . . .

[DANIEL, TO GOD:] *All Israel has broken your law and turned away by not obeying you. Therefore you have poured out on us the judgment solemnly threatened in the law of Moses the servant of God, for we have sinned against you*. [DANIEL 9:11](#)

[GOD, PRONOUNCING JUDGMENT ON KING ZEDEKIAH:] *I will bring him to Babylon and judge him there because of the unfaithfulness he committed against me*. [EZEKIEL 17:20B](#)

. . . and God's judgment is to discipline God's people

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *But when we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined* so that we may not be condemned with the world.

1 CORINTHIANS 11:32

God's judgment is to punish the wicked

But by the same word the present heavens and earth have been reserved for fire, by being kept for *the day of judgment and destruction of the ungodly*. 2 PETER 3:7

God's judgment is also to reward God's people

[ELDERS IN HEAVEN, TO GOD:] The nations were enraged, but your wrath has come, and *the time has come for the dead to be judged, and the time has come to give to your servants, the prophets, their reward, as well as to the saints and to those who revere your name, both small and great*, and the time has come to destroy those who destroy the earth. REVELATION 11:18

As well as punishment for wrongdoing, God's judgment includes reward for godliness.

God's Judgment Is Just

God judges righteously and justly

This is evidence of God's righteous judgment, to make you worthy of the kingdom of God, for which in fact you are suffering.

2 THESSALONIANS 1:5

For he has fixed a day in which *he will judge the whole world with justice* by means of a man he has chosen. ACTS 17:31A GNT

God judges people with knowledge of all their deeds

[JEREMIAH, TO GOD:] *You see everything people do. You reward each of them for the way they live and for the things they do*. JEREMIAH 32:19B

One reason why God's judgment is just is that he judges people with knowledge of all their deeds – as well as of all their thoughts and motives (as per the following subsection). As such he can make judgments with knowledge of all the relevant information.

God takes into account thoughts and motives

[JEREMIAH:] So I said to the LORD, “O LORD who rules over all, *you are a just judge! You examine people’s hearts and minds.* JEREMIAH 11:20A

God judges and repays people according to what they do

[PAUL:] But because of your stubborn and unrepentant heart you are storing up wrath for yourself on the day of wrath, *when God’s righteous judgment will be revealed.* ⁶For he will repay everyone according to what that person has done: ... ROMANS 2:5–6 ISV

God gives fair warning, allowing for judgment to be avoided

[GOD:] *There are times, Jeremiah, when I threaten to uproot, tear down, and destroy a nation or kingdom.* ⁸*But if that nation I threatened stops doing wrong, I will cancel the destruction I intended to do to it.* JEREMIAH 18:7–8

What is said here regarding nations is also applicable to individuals.

Remember the persecuted

II. The Manifestation of God's Judgment

See also: *I. Jesus Christ's Return and the Final Judgment*, p. 134

The topic of God's judgment – particularly its manifestation – is often avoided, as it contains much that is anything but “nice”. However it contains some of the most awe-inspiring teaching, and even reason for hope for God's people.

Means of God's Judicial Retribution

The following list is by no means exhaustive.

Angels

[A PSALMIST, REFERRING TO GOD:] *He inflicted his burning anger, wrath, indignation, and distress, sending destroying angels among them.*

PSALMS 78:49 ISV

Nature

The LORD sent darkness and made the land dark, but the Egyptians turned against what he said. ²⁹So he changed their water into blood and made their fish die. ³⁰Then their country was filled with frogs, even in the bedrooms of their rulers. ³¹The LORD spoke and flies came, and gnats were everywhere in the country. ³²He made hail fall like rain and sent lightning through their land. ³³He struck down their grapevines and fig trees, and he destroyed every tree in the country. ³⁴He spoke and grasshoppers came; the locusts were too many to count. ³⁵They ate all the plants in the land and everything the earth produced. PSALMS 105:28–35 NCV™

Nations

[GOD:] *Look, I am about to empower the Babylonians, that ruthless and greedy nation. They sweep across the surface of the earth, seizing dwelling places that do not belong to them. ... ¹²... [Habakkuk:] LORD, you have made them your instrument of judgment. Protector, you have appointed them as your instrument of punishment.*

HABAKKUK 1:6, 12B

Characteristics of God's Judicial Retribution

Note that not all instances of God's judicial retribution display all of the following characteristics – certainly not to the extent of which they are spoken of here. Much of the judgment spoken of in this section is conclusive in its purpose, bringing the finality of death – as opposed to God's disciplinary judgment.

Awesome power

The sounds of battle will resound to the ends of the earth. For the LORD will bring charges against the nations. He will pass judgment on all humankind and will hand the wicked over to be killed in war.' The LORD so affirms it! ³²The LORD who rules over all says, 'Disaster will soon come on one nation after another. A mighty storm of military destruction is rising up from the distant parts of the earth.'

JEREMIAH 25:31–32

Inescapable

[PAUL:] *And do you think, whoever you are, when you judge those who practice such things and yet do them yourself, that you will escape God's judgment?* ROMANS 2:3

Terrifying

Destruction, devastation, and desolation! Their hearts faint, their knees tremble, each stomach churns, each face turns pale! NAHUM 2:10

For if we choose to go on sinning after we have received the full knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, ²⁷but only a terrifying prospect of judgment and a raging fire that will consume the enemies of God. HEBREWS 10:26–27 ISV

Horrific consequences

[GOD, CONCERNING PHARAOH:] *I will throw you into an open field, where birds and animals will come to feed on your body. ⁵I will spread your rotting flesh over the mountains and in the valleys, ⁶and your blood will flow throughout the land and fill up the streams.*

EZEKIEL 32:4–6 CEV

The Wicked and God's Pending Judgment

Questioning of God's apparent lack of judgment on the wicked

[JEREMIAH:] LORD, you have always been fair whenever I have complained to you. However, *I would like to speak with you about the disposition of justice. Why are wicked people successful? Why do all dishonest people have such easy lives?* [JEREMIAH 12:1](#)

However, the situation of the wicked is precarious . . .

These people [the wicked] may prosper, but they will never feel secure about life. ²³*God may let them feel confident and self-reliant, but his eyes are on their ways.* [JOB 24:22B–23 GW](#)

. . . In due time God does take action against the wicked

[GOD:] *To me belong vengeance and recompense. In due time their feet will slip, because their time of calamity is near and the things prepared for them draw near.* [DEUTERONOMY 32:35 ISV](#)

Moreover, the wicked reap what they sow, brought down by their own evil

[ELIPHAZ:] Even as I have seen, *those who plow iniquity and those who sow trouble reap the same.* [JOB 4:8](#)

The violence done by the wicked will drag them away because they refuse to do what is right. [PROVERBS 21:7](#)

The future of the wicked contrasts with that of the righteous

[A PSALMIST, SPEAKING OF A RIGHTEOUS PERSON:] For *he will never be upended; others will always remember one who is just.* ⁷*He does not fear bad news. He is confident; he trusts in the LORD.* ⁸*His resolve is firm; he will not succumb to fear before he looks in triumph on his enemies.* ⁹*He generously gives to the needy; his integrity endures. He will be vindicated and honored.* ¹⁰*When the wicked see this, they will worry; they will grind their teeth in frustration and melt away; the desire of the wicked will perish.* [PSALMS 112:6–10](#)

Although a righteous person may fall seven times, he gets up again, but the wicked will be brought down by calamity. [PROVERBS 24:16](#)

God's Judgment of Israel – and His Mercy

Israel failed to keep God's laws and broke his covenant . . .

[GOD:] *They have gone back to the evil ways of their ancestors of old who refused to obey what I told them. They, too, have paid allegiance to other gods and worshiped them. Both the nation of Israel and the nation of Judah have violated the covenant I made with their ancestors.* JEREMIAH 11:10

Despite the Mosaic Law's provision for Israel's sin, the Israelites as a whole persisted in sin – rebelling against God and breaking his covenant with them. This showed that ultimately the law was not sufficient to deal with sin.

. . . Eventually God decided to destroy unfaithful Israel

[GOD:] *My people, you abandoned me and walked away. I am tired of showing mercy; that's why I'll destroy you ⁷by scattering you like straw blown by the wind. I will punish you with sorrow and death, because you refuse to change your ways.* JEREMIAH 15:6–7 CEV

But God promised to spare a remnant of Israel

[ISAIAH, SPEAKING A MESSAGE FROM GOD:] *Those who remain in Judah will take root in the ground and bear fruit. ³For a remnant will leave Jerusalem; survivors will come out of Mount Zion. The intense devotion of the sovereign LORD to his people will accomplish this.* 2 KINGS 19:30–31

Note that "Judah" was the name of the southern Israelite kingdom and that "Mount Zion" alludes to Jerusalem, with Zion originally being the name of one of the hills on which Jerusalem was built.

Remember the persecuted

Part C.

God and the World: Jesus Christ

11. God's Promised Messiah

I. The Messiah's Identity

The Promise of a Messiah in OT Scripture.....	102
Prophecy of the Messiah's Death for Sins	103
Jesus Is the Promised Messiah	104
Further Testimony to Jesus Being the Messiah.....	105

II. The Messiah's Purpose and Person

Jesus Christ's Mission from God.....	106
Jesus Christ's Humanity	107
Jesus Christ's Personality.....	108
Epilogue: God Works through Jesus Christ.....	108

I. The Messiah's Identity

The OT Scriptures speak of a leader chosen and sent by God to save his people and to reign forever. This leader is known as the "Christ" or the "Messiah" – which are Greek and Hebrew terms respectively, meaning the "anointed" or the "Anointed One". In NT times the Jews looked forward to the Messiah's coming and many still do today. But the NT provides compelling evidence that this Messiah was in fact Jesus Christ.

The Promise of a Messiah in OT Scripture

The OT Scriptures speak of a coming anointed one of God

[THE ARCHANGEL GABRIEL, TO DANIEL:] So know and understand: From the issuing of the command to restore and rebuild Jerusalem *until an anointed one, a prince arrives*, there will be a period of seven weeks and sixty-two weeks. DANIEL 9:25A

Regarding the "weeks", many scholars understand the term to denote seven years.

The anointed one would have God's Spirit on him

[THE MESSIAH:] *The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me, because the LORD has anointed me* to bring good news to the poor; he has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to those who are bound; ... ISAIAH 61:1 ESV

These words are prophetically attributed to the Messiah.

The Scriptures speak of the coming of a great ruler of Israel

[GOD:] As for you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, seemingly insignificant among the clans of Judah – *from you a king will emerge who will rule over Israel on my behalf, one whose origins are in the distant past.* MICAH 5:2

The ruler would bring salvation to the nations

[GOD, AS SPEAKING TO THE MESSIAH:] *I will make you as a light for the nations, that my salvation may reach to the end of the earth.* ISAIAH 49:6B ESV

The ruler would be a descendant of King David, in accordance with God's promise to David

The LORD swore an oath to David. This is a truth he will not take back: "I will set one of your own descendants on your throne. ...¹⁷There I will make a horn sprout up for David. I will prepare a lamp for my anointed one. ¹⁸I will clothe his enemies with shame, but the crown on my anointed one will shine." PSALMS 132:11, 17–18 GW

The "horn" and "lamp" (v.17) speak of the strength and continuation of David's dynasty, and would be embodied by the Messiah.

Prophecy of the Messiah's Death for Sins

The OT Scriptures also say that he would suffer and die, for people's sins – but then be raised and exalted

He was wounded for our rebellious acts. He was crushed for our sins. He was punished so that we could have peace, and we received healing from his wounds. ⁶We have all strayed like sheep. Each one of us has turned to go his own way, and the LORD has laid all our sins on him. ISAIAH 53:5–6 GW

But it was the LORD who decided to crush him and make him suffer. The LORD made his life a penalty offering, but he will still see his descendants and live a long life. He will complete the things the LORD wants him to do. ¹¹"After his soul suffers many things, he will see life and be satisfied. My good servant will make many people right with God; he will carry away their sins. ¹²For this reason I [God] will make him a great man among people, and he will share in all things with those who are strong. He willingly gave his life and was treated like a criminal. But he carried away the sins of many people and asked forgiveness for those who sinned." ISAIAH 53:10–12 NCV™

These verses speak of God raising his messianic servant to life, following his death. The term "his descendants" (v. 10b) refers to the messianic servant's spiritual descendants – those who would be given life through him. Note that Isaiah 52:13–53:12 has been called "the gospel in the OT" and is quoted in the NT more than any other OT passage.

Jesus Is the Promised Messiah

In his first coming, Jesus Christ did not come as an all-conquering ruler. The NT indicates that this aspect of messianic prophecy will be fulfilled on Christ's second coming.

Jesus Christ is the one chosen by God

[GOD:] *"This is my Son, my Chosen One. Listen to him!"* LUKE 9:35B

Jesus Christ is the one anointed by God, with the Holy Spirit . . .

[PETER:] You know that *God anointed Jesus from Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power.* ACTS 10:38A GW

The descending of the Holy Spirit onto Jesus at his baptism (cf. Matthew 3:16–17) was God's anointing of Jesus for his mission. It is also understood to mark Jesus as the Messiah – the "Anointed One" – and fulfilled OT prophecies that God would bestow his Spirit on the Messiah (cf. Isaiah 11:2; 42:1; 61:1).

. . . Jesus is the Messiah

[PETER, TO A CROWD OF LARGELY JEWS:] Therefore repent and turn back so that your sins may be wiped out, ²⁰so that times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and so that he may send *the Messiah appointed for you – that is, Jesus.* ACTS 3:19–20

The OT Scriptures testify to Jesus being the Messiah, the Christ

For with his strong arguments he [Apollos] defeated the Jews in public debates by *proving from the Scriptures that Jesus is the Messiah.* ACTS 18:28 GNT

For the OT Scriptures speak of the sufferings and resurrection of the Christ as fulfilled in Jesus . . .

Paul went to the Jews in the synagogue, as he customarily did, and on three Sabbath days *he addressed them from the scriptures, explaining and demonstrating that the Christ had to suffer and to rise from the dead, saying, "This Jesus I am proclaiming to you is the Christ."* ACTS 17:2–3

. . . and they speak of the messianic salvation that would come through Jesus Christ

[ZECHARIAH, SPEAKING OF WHAT GOD HAD DONE:] *He has raised up a mighty Savior for us in the family of his servant David.* ⁷⁰*He made this promise through his holy prophets long ago.* LUKE 1:69–70 GW

About him [Christ] all the prophets testify, that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name. ACTS 10:43

Luke 1:69–70 (above) refers to the messianic salvation prophesied in the writings of the prophets (v. 70) as coming through Jesus, who was from the family line of David (v. 69). Acts 10:43 (immediately above) states that the prophets testify that the forgiveness of sins, a key aspect of this salvation, comes through Jesus Christ.

Further Testimony to Jesus Being the Messiah

Jesus' deeds showed that he is the Messiah, the Christ

Now Jesus performed many other miraculous signs in the presence of the disciples, which are not recorded in this book. ³¹*But these are recorded so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name.* JOHN 20:30–31

People acknowledged him as the Christ

The crowds that went ahead of him [Jesus] and those following kept shouting, "Hosanna to the Son of David! Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!" MATTHEW 21:9

The crowd was acknowledging Jesus as the Christ, referring to him with messianic expressions in declaring him "the Son of David" and the one "who comes in the name of the Lord".

Note: The Christ is understood to be the Son of God

Simon Peter answered, "You are *the Christ, the Son of the living God.*" MATTHEW 16:16

The understanding that the Christ would be the Son of God appears to be largely based on OT messianic passages where God speaks of the Messiah as his Son (cf. 2 Samuel 7:11b–14a; Psalms 2:6–7; 89:27).

II. The Messiah's Purpose and Person

Arguably the fundamental assertion of the NT is that God sent the Messiah – Jesus Christ – into the world to save people from sin and its devastating consequences. For this mission, Jesus Christ was born of the Holy Spirit and became fully human – further assertions that are very significant to the Christian faith. In fulfilling the objectives of the mission, Jesus Christ lived a life which was faultless, with his character being both exemplary and inspiring. The following teaching shows the NT's testimony to these crucial matters.

Jesus Christ's Mission from God

God sent Jesus Christ into the world

[JESUS, TO THE JEWS:] But I have a testimony greater than that from John. For *the deeds that the Father has assigned me to complete – the deeds I am now doing – testify about me that the Father has sent me.* JOHN 5:36

God sent Jesus Christ to take away sins . . .

You know that *Christ came to take away sins.* 1 JOHN 3:5A CEV

. . . As such, God sent Jesus Christ to save the world

For *God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world should be saved through him.* JOHN 3:17

Jesus came to bring truth

[JESUS:] *For this reason I was born, and for this reason I came into the world – to testify to the truth.* Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice. JOHN 18:37B

Jesus came to enable us to know God

And we know that *the Son of God has come and has given us insight to know him who is true, and we are in him who is true, in his Son Jesus Christ.* 1 JOHN 5:20A

Jesus Christ's Humanity

Jesus Christ became a human being

By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and concerning sin, he condemned sin in the flesh, ... [ROMANS 8:3B](#)

God sent Jesus Christ "in a human body like ours" (NLT).

Jesus was born – after being conceived through the Holy Spirit

Now the birth of Jesus Christ happened this way. While his mother Mary was engaged to Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant through the Holy Spirit. ... ²²This all happened so that what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet would be fulfilled: ²³"Look! The virgin will conceive and bear a son, and they will call him Emmanuel," which means "God with us."

[MATTHEW 1:18, 22–23](#)

Jesus was a descendant of David

Remember Jesus Christ, who was raised from death, who was a descendant of David, as is taught in the Good News I preach.

[2 TIMOTHY 2:8 GNT](#)

Jesus' humanity was vital to his mission to save people

Therefore, since the children share in flesh and blood, he [Jesus] likewise shared in their humanity, so that through death he could destroy the one who holds the power of death (that is, the devil), ¹⁵and set free those who were held in slavery all their lives by their fear of death. ... ¹⁷Therefore he had to be made like his brothers and sisters in every respect, so that he could become a merciful and faithful high priest in things relating to God, to make atonement for the sins of the people. ¹⁸For since he himself suffered when he was tempted, he is able to help those who are tempted. [HEBREWS 2:14–15, 17–18](#)

Jesus needed to share in the humanity of God's people and become like them so as to be identified with them, in a sense being one with them. As such he could die as a substitute and an offering for them. Partaking of their humanity would also be important for him in his ongoing role in helping God's people, as indicated in v. 18 and possibly also in v. 17.

Jesus Christ's Personality

Jesus was loving

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *Just as the Father has loved me, I have also loved you; remain in my love.* JOHN 15:9

Jesus was compassionate

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion on them because they were bewildered and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd.

MATTHEW 9:36

Jesus was gentle and humble

[JESUS:] Take my yoke on you and learn from me, because *I am gentle and humble in heart*, and you will find rest for your souls.

MATTHEW 11:29

Jesus was righteous

For Christ also suffered once for sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, that he might bring us to God, ... 1 PETER 3:18A ESV

Epilogue: God Works through Jesus Christ

God works in all eras through Jesus Christ, impacting all things everywhere

But now in these last days God has spoken to us through his Son. God has chosen his Son to own all things, and *through him he made the world.* HEBREWS 1:2 NCV™

Through the Son, then, God decided to bring the whole universe back to himself. God made peace through his Son's blood on the cross and so brought back to himself all things, both on earth and in heaven.

COLOSSIANS 1:20 GNT

God fulfills his promises through Jesus Christ

For all God's promises are "Yes" in him. 2 CORINTHIANS 1:20A ISV

All God's promises are confirmed or "fulfilled" (NLT) in Jesus Christ.

12. Jesus Christ's Mission

I. God's Enablement of Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ's Power from God.....	110
Jesus Christ's Knowledge from God.....	111
Jesus Christ's Direction from God.....	112

II. Jesus Christ's Ministry, Death and Resurrection

Jesus Christ's Miracles	113
Jesus Christ's Teaching.....	114
Jesus Christ's Rejection and Death.....	114
Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Ascension	116

I. God's Enablement of Jesus Christ

God enabled Jesus Christ to carry out his mission, empowering and directing him. Consequently what Jesus did and said showed that he had been sent and empowered by God. For without God no one could possibly have the extraordinary authority, power and knowledge that Jesus had.

Jesus Christ's Power from God

God granted Jesus sovereign authority

[JESUS:] *All things have been handed over to me by my Father.*
 MATTHEW 11:27A

For you [God] *have given him authority over all humanity* so that he might give eternal life to all those you gave him. JOHN 17:2 ISV

God bestowed the Holy Spirit on Jesus, for his mission . . .

After Jesus was baptized, just as he was coming up out of the water, *the heavens opened and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming on him.*¹⁷And a voice from heaven said, "This is my one dear Son; in him I take great delight." MATTHEW 3:16–17

As noted earlier, the descending of the Holy Spirit onto Jesus Christ at his baptism is understood to be God's anointing of Jesus Christ for his mission (cf. Luke 4:18). As such, through the Holy Spirit God empowered Jesus in his mission.

. . . The Holy Spirit empowered Jesus in what he said and did

The man [Jesus] whom God has sent speaks God's message. After all, God gives him the Spirit without limit. JOHN 3:34 GW

God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power, and he went around doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, because God was with him. ACTS 10:38 ISV

Presumably the power spoken of was due to the Holy Spirit, the power being given in conjunction with the Holy Spirit. This verse also appears to correlate Jesus having the Holy Spirit with God's presence being with him.

As such, Jesus did many miraculous deeds with God's power

The power of the Lord was present for Jesus to heal the sick. LUKE 5:17B GNT

One night Nicodemus came to Jesus and said, "Teacher, we know you are a teacher sent from God, because *no one can do the miracles you do unless God is with him.*" JOHN 3:2 NCV™

Jesus Christ's Knowledge from God

God taught Jesus

[JESUS:] I do nothing on my own initiative, but *I speak just what the Father taught me.* JOHN 8:28B

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] But I have called you friends, because *I have revealed to you everything I heard from my Father.* JOHN 15:15B

Jesus taught his disciples everything he learned from God.

Moreover, Jesus knew everything

[THE DISCIPLES, TO JESUS:] Now *we know that you know everything* and do not need anyone to ask you anything. Because of this we believe that you have come from God. JOHN 16:30

The final statement arguably suggests that Jesus' knowledge of all things was due to God. Jesus' complete knowledge would appear to have been due to both God's teaching of him (as per the previous subsection) and God enabling him to know or perceive all things about people and everything else.

Jesus was also filled with wisdom

And *the child [Jesus] grew and became strong, filled with wisdom,* and the favor of God was upon him. LUKE 2:40

Nobody could match Jesus' wisdom

[MEN TRYING TO TRICK JESUS:] Is it right for us to pay the tribute tax to Caesar or not?" ²³But *Jesus perceived their deceit and said to them,* ²⁴"*Show me a denarius. Whose image and inscription are on it?*" They said, "Caesar's." ²⁵So he said to them, "*Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's.*" ²⁶Thus they

were unable in the presence of the people to trap him with his own words. And stunned by his answer, they fell silent. [LUKE 20:22–26](#)

No one could answer him at all, and from that day on no one dared to ask him another question. [MATTHEW 22:46](#) ISV

Jesus Christ's Direction from God

God worked through Jesus . . .

[PETER:] Listen to these words, fellow-Israelites! Jesus of Nazareth was a man whose divine authority was clearly proven to you by *all the miracles and wonders which God performed through him*. You yourselves know this, for it happened here among you. [ACTS 2:22](#) GNT

. . . Jesus only did what God did

So Jesus answered them, “I tell you the solemn truth, *the Son can do nothing on his own initiative, but only what he sees the Father doing. For whatever the Father does, the Son does likewise*. [JOHN 5:19](#)

Jesus carried out God's will, doing the work God had given him

Jesus said to them, “*My food is to do the will of the one who sent me and to complete his work*. [JOHN 4:34](#)

In speaking of doing God's will as his “food”, Jesus indicated that it was his prime source of “nourishment” (AMP, NLT). Doing God's work was in a sense what sustained him and was his top priority.

Remember the persecuted

II. Jesus Christ's Ministry, Death and Resurrection

The life Jesus Christ lived has been unparalleled in word and deed. It culminated in his sacrificial death and subsequent resurrection by God. How we respond to the NT's testimony to these events and their significance, will determine our eternal destiny.

Jesus Christ's Miracles

Jesus performed miraculous deeds that greatly amazed people

People were completely astounded and said, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak. [MARK 7:37](#)

Jesus delivered people from disease and disorders . . .

People brought to him all who suffered with various illnesses and afflictions, those who had seizures, paralytics, and those possessed by demons, and he healed them. [MATTHEW 4:24B](#)

. . . Jesus even raised the dead

And they began making fun of him, because *they knew that she was dead.* ⁵⁴*But Jesus gently took her by the hand and said, "Child, get up."* ⁵⁵*Her spirit returned, and she got up immediately.* [LUKE 8:53–55A](#)

Jesus exercised control over nature, in helping people

Now a great windstorm developed and the waves were breaking into the boat, so that the boat was nearly swamped. ... ³⁹*So he got up and rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Be quiet! Calm down!" Then the wind stopped, and it was dead calm.* [MARK 4:37, 39](#)

[ANDREW, TO JESUS:] *Here is a boy who has five barley loaves and two fish, but what good are these for so many people?"* ¹⁰Jesus said, "Have the people sit down." ... So the men sat down, *about five thousand in number.* ¹¹*Then Jesus took the loaves, and when he had given thanks, he distributed the bread to those who were seated. He then did the same with the fish, as much as they wanted.* [JOHN 6:9–11](#)

Jesus Christ's Teaching

Jesus preached the good news of the kingdom of God

Jesus went throughout all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, *preaching the gospel of the kingdom*, and healing all kinds of disease and sickness among the people. [MATTHEW 4:23](#)

The kingdom of God (or the kingdom of heaven) was the most prominent theme in Jesus' teaching.

Jesus' teaching was from God

[JESUS:] *This teaching that you hear is not really mine; it is from my Father, who sent me.* [JOHN 14:24B](#) NCV™

Jesus' teaching was amazing – leading people to believe in him

When the crowds heard this, *they were amazed at his teaching.* [MATTHEW 22:33](#)

And *many more believed because of the things he said.* ⁴²They said to the woman, "First we believed in Jesus because of your speech, but now we believe because we heard him ourselves. We know that this man really is the Savior of the world." [JOHN 4:41–42](#) NCV™

Jesus Christ's Rejection and Death

Jesus faced intense opposition, with efforts to kill him

Now *because Jesus was doing these things* [miracles] *on the Sabbath, the Jewish leaders began persecuting him.* ¹⁷So he told them, "My Father is working until now, and I too am working." ¹⁸For this reason *the Jewish leaders were trying even harder to kill him*, because not only was he breaking the Sabbath, but he was also calling God his own Father, thus making himself equal with God. [JOHN 5:16–18](#)

The unjust condemnation of Jesus – who was innocent

Then Pilate said to the chief priests and the crowds, "*I find no basis for an accusation against this man.*" ... ²⁰Pilate addressed them once again *because he wanted to release Jesus.* ²¹But they kept on shouting, "*Crucify, crucify him!*" ²²A third time he said to them,

“Why? What wrong has he done? I have found him guilty of no crime deserving death. I will therefore flog him and release him.” ²³*But they were insistent, demanding with loud shouts that he be crucified. And their shouts prevailed.* ²⁴*So Pilate decided that their demand should be granted.* LUKE 23:4, 20–24

The horrific suffering and death of Jesus

Then he [Pilate] released Barabbas for them. But *after he had Jesus flogged, he handed him over to be crucified.* ²⁷Then the governor's soldiers took Jesus into the governor's residence and gathered the whole cohort around him. ²⁸*They stripped him and put a scarlet robe around him,* ²⁹*and after braiding a crown of thorns, they put it on his head. They put a staff in his right hand, and kneeling down before him, they mocked him: “Hail, king of the Jews!”* ³⁰*They spat on him and took the staff and struck him repeatedly on the head.* ³¹*When they had mocked him, they stripped him of the robe and put his own clothes back on him. Then they led him away to crucify him. ...* ³⁵*When they had crucified him, they divided his clothes by throwing dice. ...* ³⁹*Those who passed by defamed him, shaking their heads* ⁴⁰*and saying, “You who can destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save yourself! If you are God's Son, come down from the cross!”* ... ⁴⁵*Now from noon until three, darkness came over all the land.* ⁴⁶*At about three o'clock Jesus shouted with a loud voice, “Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?” that is, “My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?”* ... ⁵⁰*Then Jesus cried out again with a loud voice and gave up his spirit.* MATTHEW 27:26–31, 35, 39–40, 45–46, 50

In v. 46, Jesus' cry (cf. Psalms 22:1) suggests that the intimate relationship between himself and God had in some way or sense been impaired.

It was God's will that Jesus die – for everyone

[PETER, TO A CROWD OF LARGELY JEWS:] *In accordance with his own plan God had already decided that Jesus would be handed over to you; and you killed him by letting sinful men crucify him.* ACTS 2:23 GNT

God didn't spare his own Son but handed him over to death for all of us. ROMANS 8:32A GW

Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Ascension

God raised Jesus from the dead . . .

But *God raised him up, having released him from the pains of death, because it was not possible for him to be held in its power.* ACTS 2:24

. . . Jesus' body was not found in his tomb

[AN EARLY BELIEVER:] Furthermore, some women of our group amazed us. *They were at the tomb early this morning, ²³and when they did not find his body, they came back and said they had seen a vision of angels, who said he was alive. ²⁴Then some of those who were with us went to the tomb, and found it just as the women had said, but they did not see him.* LUKE 24:22–24

Jesus appeared to people after his resurrection

To the same apostles also, after his suffering, he presented himself alive with many convincing proofs. He was seen by them over a forty-day period and spoke about matters concerning the kingdom of God. ACTS 1:3

[PETER, TO A CROWD OF LARGELY JEWS:] *This Jesus God raised up, and we are all witnesses of it.* ACTS 2:32

Jesus was taken up to God in heaven

After he [Jesus] had said this, while they were watching, *he was lifted up and a cloud hid him from their sight. ¹⁰As they were still staring into the sky while he was going, suddenly two men in white clothing stood near them ¹¹and said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand here looking up into the sky? This same Jesus who has been taken up from you into heaven will come back in the same way you saw him go into heaven."* ACTS 1:9–11

Because he suffered death, God gave Jesus Christ great glory

We see him now crowned with glory and honor because of the death he suffered. HEBREWS 2:9B GNT

13. Salvation through Jesus Christ

I. Salvation from Sin

Jesus Christ's Sacrifice for Us.....	118
Atonement for Sin.....	118
Redemption from Sin	120
Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Salvation	121

II. Salvation for the World

The Savior of the World.....	122
Life through Jesus Christ	122
Salvation for the Gentiles through Jesus Christ.....	123
Epilogue: Jesus Christ's Mission and Israel.....	124

I. Salvation from Sin

The teachings in this section are at the absolute heart of the NT and the gospel message. It is critical for anyone trying to comprehend the Christian faith to soundly understand them.

Jesus Christ's Sacrifice for Us

Jesus gave himself to God, as a sacrifice for our sins

Live a life of love just as *Christ loved us and gave himself for us as a sweet-smelling offering and sacrifice to God.* [EPHESIANS 5:2](#) NCV™

Jesus brought the sacrifice for the sins of the people once and for all when he sacrificed himself. [HEBREWS 7:27B](#) GW

So, Jesus Christ died for us

But God demonstrates his own love for us, in that *while we were still sinners, Christ died for us.* [ROMANS 5:8](#)

Jesus Christ gave his life as a substitute for our lives. He died in our place to pay the penalty for our sin, so that we would not have to pay it ourselves with everlasting death. Instead we can have everlasting life. This is life which extends beyond physical death. Note that as the Son of God, Jesus Christ's life is worth infinitely more than our lives, and so his death was an adequate sacrifice for any number of people.

Atonement for Sin

Biblical atonement is where God in his grace accepts an offering or sacrifice of a living being (i.e. its life) as a substitute for the life of a sinner – the person's life otherwise being required for their sin. As such, God accepts the sacrifice as payment for the person's sin. The result is that sin is taken away – and so the sinner is forgiven, pronounced righteous and reconciled to God. In conjunction with this, God's wrath – provoked by sin – is appeased.

In the OT, people who had sinned brought an animal as an offering of a life, for the priests to sacrifice on their behalf to make

atonement for them. Jesus Christ's offering or sacrifice of himself has a number of striking parallels with this OT practice. Furthermore, his death in fact fulfilled this requirement of the OT law once and for all, making such offerings no longer necessary. The atonement made by Jesus Christ's death is central to the Christian faith.

Jesus Christ's sacrifice means that our sins can be forgiven . . .

[JESUS:] *For this is my blood of the new covenant that is being poured out for many people for the forgiveness of sins.* MATTHEW 26:28 ISV

But now, at the end of the ages, *he has appeared once for all to remove sin by his sacrifice.*²⁷ Indeed, just as people are appointed to die once and after that to be judged,²⁸ *so the Messiah was sacrificed once to take away the sins of many people.* HEBREWS 9:26B–28A ISV

. . . and that we can therefore be righteous before God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Much more then, because *we have now been declared righteous by his blood*, we will be saved through him from God's wrath. ROMANS 5:9

Consequently, through Jesus Christ's death we can be reconciled to God . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] You used to be far from God. Your thoughts made you his enemies, and you did evil things.²² *But his Son became a human and died. So God made peace with you, and now he lets you stand in his presence as people who are holy and faultless and innocent.* COLOSSIANS 1:21–22 CEV

. . . and so through Jesus Christ we can have peace with God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, *we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.* ROMANS 5:1 ESV

Thus, Jesus Christ was the atoning sacrifice for sins, saving people from God's wrath

It is he who is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not for ours only, but also for the whole world's. 1 JOHN 2:2 ISV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For God did not destine us for wrath but for gaining salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ.* 1 THESSALONIANS 5:9

Redemption from Sin

To “redeem” someone was to set them free by paying a ransom, a payment of comparable value. Such terminology was often used in NT times in reference to paying the price to free a slave. In the NT Scriptures it is applied to Jesus Christ redeeming or freeing believers from enslavement to sin by giving his life as a ransom.

Jesus gave himself as a ransom for us, to free us from sin

For there is one God and one intermediary between God and humanity, *Christ Jesus, himself human, ⁶who gave himself as a ransom for all*, revealing God’s purpose at his appointed time.

1 TIMOTHY 2:5–6

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] To the one who loves us [Christ] and *has set us free from our sins at the cost of his own blood ...* REVELATION 1:5B

Christ redeems or frees people from enslavement to sin, through having given his life as a ransom for them (cf. 1 Timothy 2:5–6 ↑). This concept of redemption is complementary to that of atonement.

Jesus Christ’s death sets us free from sin’s control

He gave himself for us to set us free from every kind of lawlessness and to purify for himself a people who are truly his, who are eager to do good. TITUS 2:14

God’s people have been bought by Jesus Christ’s death

They [heavenly beings] were singing a new song: “You [Christ] are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals because you were killed, and *at the cost of your own blood you have purchased for God persons from every tribe, language, people, and nation.* REVELATION 5:9

An implication of believers being redeemed from sin by Jesus Christ’s death is that they have been bought for God – to whom they are now slaves (as the following subsection indicates).

As such, they are free from sin and are now slaves to God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But now that *you have been freed from sin and have become God’s slaves*, the benefit you reap is sanctification, and the result is eternal life. ROMANS 6:22 ISV

Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Salvation

Jesus Christ's resurrection has a key part in us being saved

[PETER, SPEAKING TO BELIEVERS AND MAKING REFERENCE TO BAPTISM:] It is not the washing away of bodily dirt, but the promise made to God from a good conscience. *It saves you through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, ...* 1 PETER 3:21 GNT

By what baptism symbolizes (as opposed to the act of baptism) we are saved by Jesus Christ's resurrection – the culmination of his saving work.

Jesus Christ's resurrection was essential for our resurrection

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is useless; you are still in your sins. ¹⁸Furthermore, those who have fallen asleep in Christ have also perished. ¹⁹For if only in this life we have hope in Christ, we should be pitied more than anyone. ²⁰But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. ²¹For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead also came through a man. ²²For just as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive. ²³But each in his own order: Christ, the firstfruits; then when Christ comes, those who belong to him.* 1 CORINTHIANS 15:17–23

The "firstfruits" (vv. 20, 23) alludes to the firstfruits of the harvest which were offered to God. As well as preceding the rest of the harvest, they were seen as a confirmation that the rest would take place. Here the term is applied to Christ, as like the firstfruits of the harvest, his resurrection precedes and is an assurance of the resurrection of all believers.

Remember the persecuted

II. Salvation for the World

Prior to Jesus Christ's mission, God dealt primarily with Israel, as his people. What Christ accomplished had great implications for all people – notably in making God's salvation, with eternal life, freely available to every person. An associated outcome is that people from all nations can readily become one of God's own people.

The Savior of the World

God provides salvation through Jesus Christ . . .

For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him. JOHN 3:17 ESV

. . . Jesus Christ is the Savior of the world

[JOHN:] And we have seen and testify that *the Father has sent the Son to be the Savior of the world.* 1 JOHN 4:14

We can only be saved through Jesus Christ

Salvation is to be found through him alone; in all the world there is no one else whom God has given who can save us. ACTS 4:12 GNT

Jesus replied, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. JOHN 14:6

The first statement may well mean that: Jesus is the way to the Father because he is the truth and the life. The second statement emphatically states that he is the only way to God, one implication of which is that Jesus is the only source of salvation.

Life through Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ brings spiritual life

[JESUS:] The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy; *I have come so that they may have life, and may have it abundantly.* JOHN 10:10

The "life" spoken of in the NT that Jesus Christ provides is spiritual life. It involves being "alive to God" (Rom 6:11), with God's Holy

Spirit indwelling us, renewing and nourishing us. With this, we have a spiritual consciousness that enables us to live in communion with and in dependence on God. This spiritual life is only attainable through Jesus Christ and what he has accomplished.

Through Jesus Christ we can have eternal life rather than death

For this is the way God loved the world: He gave his one and only Son, so that *everyone who believes in him will not perish but have eternal life. ...* ³⁶*The one who believes in the Son has eternal life. The one who rejects the Son will not see life, but God's wrath remains on him.* JOHN 3:16, 36

Jesus said to her, *"I am the resurrection and the life. The one who believes in me will live even if he dies, ²⁶and the one who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?"* JOHN 11:25–26

Jesus is the one through whom resurrection and life come (v. 25a). Those who believe in him will live even though they die physically (v. 25b). At a spiritual level they will never die (v. 26a), but live eternally.

Salvation for the Gentiles through Jesus Christ

In OT times it was firstly only the Israelites, then after the Babylonian captivity more specifically the Jews, who were "God's people" and knew of God's salvation. But through Jesus Christ's mission, God has made salvation open to the Gentiles.

Jesus Christ died for all people

But we do see Jesus, who for a little while was made lower than the angels, so *that through God's grace he should die for everyone.*

HEBREWS 2:9A GNT

Salvation is now open to everyone who will accept it by repentance and faith (cf. *I. Getting Right with God*, p. 188).

God has made the way of faith in Jesus open also to Gentiles

God puts people right through their faith in Jesus Christ. ... ³⁰*God is one, and he will put the Jews right with himself on the basis of their faith, and will put the Gentiles right through their faith.*

ROMANS 3:22A, 30 GNT

Jesus Christ has made Jews and Gentiles one

Jesus was going to die for the Jewish people,⁵² and not only for them, but also to bring together into one body all the scattered people of God. JOHN 11:51B–52 GNT

By dying for all people, Jesus has enabled both Jews and Gentiles to become part of the one people of God.

Those who believe are the true, spiritual children of Abraham

The Scriptures say the same thing about Abraham: *“Abraham believed God, and God accepted Abraham’s faith, and that faith made him right with God.”*⁷ *So you should know that the true children of Abraham are those who have faith.* GALATIANS 3:6–7 NCV™

Epilogue: Jesus Christ’s Mission and Israel

Jesus Christ came foremost to Israel

And so God chose his Servant and sent him first to you [the Jews], to bless you by making every one of you turn away from your wicked ways. ACTS 3:26 GNT

But the Jews largely rejected Jesus Christ

He came to what was his own, but *his own people did not receive him.* JOHN 1:11

So, God largely rejected the Jews and accepted the Gentiles

*But by their [the people of Israel’s] transgression salvation has come to the Gentiles, to make Israel jealous. ...*¹⁵ *For if their rejection is the reconciliation of the world, what will their acceptance be but life from the dead?* ROMANS 11:11B, 15

In v. 11, their “transgression” refers to the Jews’/Israel’s rejection of the gospel, God’s way of righteousness that is by faith in Christ.

However, God has left a faithful remnant of Israel

So in the same way at the present time there is a remnant chosen by grace. ROMANS 11:5

14. The New Order

I. Jesus Christ and the Law's Diminished Role

Righteousness by Faith and Grace	126
Release from the Law through Jesus Christ	127
The Relevance of the Law	128

II. Key Elements of the New Order

God's New Covenant	129
Jesus Christ as High Priest	130
The Kingdom of God	131
Jesus Christ as Lord of All	132

I. Jesus Christ and the Law's Diminished Role

In order to be righteous before God, the Israelites had to continually follow the law God had given through Moses, keeping all of its commands – something which they proved incapable of doing. But through Jesus Christ's life and death, God has provided a new way of righteousness, for all people – leading to salvation. As a result of this, the role of the law has been profoundly changed.

Righteousness by Faith and Grace

The Mosaic Law cannot bring perfection

The law of Moses could not make anything perfect. [HEBREWS 7:19A](#) NCV™

We are not made righteous by obeying the law – but by faith in Jesus Christ

For by works of the law no human being will be justified in his [God's] sight, since through the law comes knowledge of sin. ²¹But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it— ²²the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe.

[ROMANS 3:20–22A](#) ESV

God's way now for us to be made righteous before him is through having faith in Jesus Christ. This primarily involves believing Jesus Christ to be (with what he has accomplished) the means of righteousness – and accordingly trusting in him for one's own righteousness.

In conjunction with this, faith in Jesus Christ encompasses believing what the Bible says about: who he is; his death and resurrection; and the outcomes of his mission. This is discussed further in *I. Getting Right with God*, p. 188.

As such, we are justified and made righteous by God's grace, through Jesus Christ – not by law . . .

But they [people] are justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus. [ROMANS 3:24](#)

[PAUL:] *I do not set aside God's grace, because if righteousness could come through the law, then Christ died for nothing!* GALATIANS 2:21

God's grace is his free and undeserved favor to people. By God's grace we are granted righteousness through Jesus Christ's death for us – as opposed to earning righteousness through obeying the law.

. . . We are saved by God's grace rather than by works

For *by grace you are saved through faith, and this is not from yourselves, it is the gift of God; ⁹it is not from works*, so that no one can boast. EPHESIANS 2:8–9

Here "works" refers to things done in attempting to work for or earn righteousness and salvation – particularly in trying to fulfill the law.

Release from the Law through Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ fully realized what the law had worked towards

For *the law possesses a shadow of the good things to come but not the reality itself, and is therefore completely unable, by the same sacrifices offered continually, year after year, to perfect those who come to worship. ... ¹⁰By his will we have been made holy through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.* HEBREWS 10:1, 10

The Mosaic Law had primarily worked toward the removal of sin and making God's people holy. But its work really only foreshadowed "the reality" (v. 1) that would be realized through Jesus Christ. For the law's sacrifices for sin were not sufficient to comprehensively deal with sin and make people perfect (v. 1). But with the sacrifice of himself, Jesus Christ fulfilled what the law with its sin offerings in effect pointed towards, by consummately removing sins (cf. v. 12) and making God's people holy (v. 10).

Through Christ believers have been released from the law

Thus *the law had become our guardian until Christ, so that we could be declared righteous by faith. ²⁵But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a guardian.* GALATIANS 3:24–25

The law was only ever to be the authority over God's people until Jesus Christ came, when faith would supersede it as the way for God's people to be righteous.

With Jesus Christ's once and for all sacrifice, there is no longer any need to sacrifice for sin

*Christ, however, offered one sacrifice for sins, an offering that is effective for ever, and then he sat down at the right-hand side of God. ...*¹⁷*And then he [God] says, "I will not remember their sins and evil deeds any longer."*¹⁸*So when these have been forgiven, an offering to take away sins is no longer needed.* [HEBREWS 10:12, 17–18 GNT](#)

Instead of being under the law, believers are under grace

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For sin will have no mastery over you, because you are not under law but under grace.* [ROMANS 6:14](#)

Believers are not under the law but "under grace". By grace righteousness and salvation are not only gained, as discussed earlier, but are also maintained. For in his grace God enables believers to live godly lives and continues to provide for forgiveness when they do sin. Accordingly, believers are to rely on God's grace both in striving to please God and for forgiveness.

The Relevance of the Law

The main purpose of the law is to make people aware of sin

For no one is declared righteous before him by the works of the law, for *through the law comes the knowledge of sin.* [ROMANS 3:20](#)

The law's spiritual and moral commands are still to be obeyed

[JESUS:] *I tell you the truth, until heaven and earth pass away not the smallest letter or stroke of a letter will pass [away] from the law until everything takes place.*¹⁹*So anyone who breaks one of the least of these commands and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven, but whoever obeys them and teaches others to do so will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.* [MATTHEW 5:18–19](#)

The spiritual and moral commands of the law basically are the commands pertaining to the believer's spiritual relationship with God and their relationships with people. Most likely here Jesus had these commands at least primarily in view, with a number of them being the subject of his subsequent teaching (cf. vv. 21–48).

II. Key Elements of the New Order

Through Jesus Christ's mission God enhanced his relationship with his people and the world. Two defining aspects of this new order are God's new covenant with his own people and the kingdom of God.

As well as having instituted these two things in his mission, Jesus Christ continues to play a key role in both of them. Jesus Christ's role as high priest is arguably the central aspect of God's new covenant with his people. Jesus Christ's reign as Lord of all things involves reigning over the kingdom of God. Additionally, his reign extends to reigning over all things that are as yet to be subjugated to God's kingdom, which awaits consummation.

God's New Covenant

The first covenant (with its priesthood and law) was inadequate and superseded by the new covenant – through Christ

But now Jesus has obtained a superior ministry [to the priests' ministry], since the covenant that he mediates is also better [than the first covenant] and is enacted on better promises. ⁷For if that first covenant had been faultless, no one would have looked for a second one. ... ¹³When he [God] speaks of a new covenant, he makes the first obsolete. Now what is growing obsolete and aging is about to disappear. HEBREWS 8:6–7, 13

The covenant which God made with Israel proved inadequate as Israel could not keep the covenant (by obeying its law) and consequently could not be righteous before God. But God has abolished the old covenant and introduced a superior new covenant – through Jesus Christ and his mission.

Under the new covenant, God's people: have God's laws in them; know him; and are forgiven

"For this is the covenant that I will establish with the house of Israel after those days, says the Lord. I will put my laws in their minds and I will inscribe them on their hearts. And I will be their God and they will be my people. ¹¹And there will be no need at all for each one to

*teach his countryman or each one to teach his brother saying, ‘Know the Lord,’ since they will all know me, from the least to the greatest.*¹²*“For I will be merciful toward their evil deeds, and their sins I will remember no longer.”* [HEBREWS 8:10–12](#)

Under the new covenant God’s laws have become internal principles (v. 10), not just commands from an external source. Moreover, God’s people know him and their sins are truly forgiven (v. 11–12). Bear in mind that the reference to “the house of Israel” (v. 10) is applicable to the new people of God, inclusive of Gentiles.

Jesus Christ as High Priest

Jesus Christ is the high priest of God’s people – representing them before God in the superior heavenly sanctuary

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] *We have such a high priest, one who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven,*²*a minister in the sanctuary and the true tabernacle that the Lord, not man, set up.* [HEBREWS 8:1B–2](#)

In the replacement of God’s old covenant with Israel by God’s new covenant with all who are now his people, the priesthood of the old covenant has been replaced by Christ’s superior priesthood.

Jesus Christ sacrificed for sin once and for all

But when *this priest had offered one sacrifice for sins for all time*, he sat down at the right hand of God,¹³ where he is now waiting until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet.¹⁴ *For by one offering he has perfected for all time those who are made holy.* [HEBREWS 10:12–14](#)

Jesus Christ intercedes for God’s people

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] I am writing this to you, my children, so that you will not sin; but *if anyone does sin, we have someone who pleads with the Father on our behalf—Jesus Christ, the righteous one.*

[1 JOHN 2:1](#) GNT

In his ongoing priestly ministry for God’s people, Jesus Christ continues to intercede before God for them, speaking to God on their behalf.

The Kingdom of God

NT teaching on the kingdom of God (or the kingdom of heaven) follows on from OT teaching on God's reign or kingship (cf. *7. God's Sovereignty*, p. 67). It indicates that Jesus Christ's coming inaugurated a more far-reaching, spiritual dimension of God's reign. Its domain is in the hearts and minds of those who submit to God. This kingdom of God also has both a present and future dimension – existing now, but only being fully consummated at the end of the age. Then God's authority will be fully imposed in all spheres of existence – once and for all.

The kingdom of God came in Jesus Christ's mission

Now after John was imprisoned, Jesus went into Galilee and proclaimed the gospel of God. ¹⁵*He said, "The time is fulfilled and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the gospel!"* [MARK 1:14–15](#)

With Jesus' mission, the time had come for the kingdom of God to "come near" (NRSV).

The kingdom of God is spiritual in its nature

[JESUS:] *"The Kingdom of God does not come in such a way as to be seen. ²¹No one will say, 'Look, here it is!' or, 'There it is!'; because the Kingdom of God is within you."* [LUKE 17:20B–21](#) GNT

The final clause of v. 21 probably means that God's kingdom is within the hearts of its people (cf. CEV text note), indicative of its spiritual nature.

The kingdom of God is dynamic

He [Jesus] also said, *"The kingdom of God is like someone who spreads seed on the ground. ²⁷He goes to sleep and gets up, night and day, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he does not know how. ²⁸By itself the soil produces a crop, first the stalk, then the head, then the full grain in the head. ²⁹And when the grain is ripe, he sends in the sickle because the harvest has come."* [MARK 4:26–29](#)

The growth of God's kingdom illustrates its dynamism and power. "By itself" (v. 28) indicates that the growth of the kingdom is not brought about simply by human effort. Rather it is in a way that is in fact beyond human comprehension (v. 27b).

Jesus Christ as Lord of All

God has made Jesus Christ Lord of all things, to rule over all creation on God's behalf.

The NT speaks of Jesus Christ's lordship as being initiated or affirmed, in him being pronounced Lord of all upon his post-resurrection exaltation to God's right hand. However, note that some verses suggest that in some sense at least he was Lord of all things prior to this, speaking of his prior power or authority over all things.

God has made Jesus Christ Lord of all

You know the message he [God] sent to the people of Israel, proclaiming the Good News of peace through *Jesus Christ, who is Lord of all*. [ACTS 10:36](#) GNT

As a result [of Jesus being obedient and dying] *God exalted him and gave him the name that is above every name, ¹⁰so that at the name of Jesus every knee will bow – in heaven and on earth and under the earth – ¹¹and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father*. [PHILIPPIANS 2:9–11](#)

Note that vv. 10–11 above speak of all people in the future acknowledging Jesus Christ's status as Lord, which itself is a current reality.

God has given Jesus Christ power over all things

Jesus knew that the Father had given him power over everything and that he had come from God and was going back to God. [JOHN 13:3](#) NCV™

In the end, all Jesus Christ's enemies will be made his footstool – totally conquered

But when this priest [Christ] had offered one sacrifice for sins for all time, he sat down at the right hand of God, ¹³where *he is now waiting until his enemies are made a footstool for his feet*. [HEBREWS 10:12–13](#)

15. 'The Last Things'

I. Jesus Christ's Return and the Final Judgment

The Timing of Jesus Christ's Return	134
Jesus Christ's Return	135
The Final Judgment (I): Its Scope and Outcomes	136
The Final Judgment (II): The Process	136
The Millennium	137

II. The Afterlife

The New Creation	138
Eternal Life	138
The Heavenly State of God's People.....	139
Being with God.....	140
The Punishment for the Ungodly.....	140

I. Jesus Christ's Return and the Final Judgment

The history of the world as we know it will culminate in Jesus Christ's dramatic and awesome return. Associated with this is God's final judgment of all people, through Jesus Christ, in which the eternal destiny of each person will be pronounced.

Note that further events of the end times are discussed in *1. The Persecution of God's People*, p. 346. Although they are events that precede Christ's second coming, they are still an aspect of the biblical teachings that are often referred to as 'The Last Things'.

The Timing of Jesus Christ's Return

Jesus Christ will return at an unexpected time, while people are living as usual

You know very well that *the day the Lord comes again will be a surprise, like a thief that comes in the night.* [1 THESSALONIANS 5:2 NCV™](#)

No one knows when that day or hour will come—not the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father, ³⁷*because just as it was in the days of Noah, so it will be when the Son of Man comes.* ³⁸*In those days before the flood, people were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage right up to the day when Noah went into the ark.* ³⁹*They were unaware of what was happening until the flood came and swept all of them away. That's how it will be when the Son of Man comes.* [MATTHEW 24:36–39 ISV](#)

Jesus Christ's return will be preceded by distressful events

And when you hear of wars and rebellions, do not be afraid. For these things must happen first, but the end will not come at once." ¹⁰*Then he [Jesus] said to them, "Nation will rise up in arms against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. ¹¹There will be great earthquakes, and famines and plagues in various places, and there will be terrifying sights and great signs from heaven.* [LUKE 21:9–11](#)

For that day will not arrive until the rebellion comes and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the son of destruction. ⁴*He opposes and*

exalts himself above every so-called god or object of worship, and as a result he takes his seat in God's temple, displaying himself as God.

2 THESSALONIANS 2:3B-4

This "man of lawlessness" (v. 3) appears to be a final antichrist, (cf. Revelation 13), instigating momentous "rebellion" (v. 3) against God.

Awesome cosmic events will occur just prior to Christ's return

Immediately after the suffering of those days, *the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light; the stars will fall from heaven, and the powers of heaven will be shaken.* ³⁰*Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn.* MATTHEW 24:29-30A

Jesus Christ's Return

Jesus Christ will return with his angels

He will do this *when the Lord Jesus appears from heaven with his mighty angels, ...* 2 THESSALONIANS 1:7B GNT

Jesus Christ will come in great glory

Then *they* [people] *will see the Son of Man arriving in a cloud with power and great glory.* LUKE 21:27

On Jesus Christ's return his followers will be gathered to him

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For the Lord himself will come down from heaven with a shout of command, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trumpet of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first.* ¹⁷*Then we who are alive, who are left, will be suddenly caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will always be with the Lord.* 1 THESSALONIANS 4:16-17

On Jesus Christ's return evil powers will be crushed

But each in his own order: Christ, the firstfruits; then *when Christ comes, those who belong to him.* ²⁴*Then comes the end, when he hands over the kingdom to God the Father, when he has brought to an end all rule and all authority and power.* ²⁵*For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet.* 1 CORINTHIANS 15:23-25

The Final Judgment (I): Its Scope and Outcomes

God will judge every person, for all they have done

For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God. [ROMANS 14:10B](#)

But remember that God will judge you for everything you do.

[ECCLESIASTES 11:9B](#) NCV™

The dead will rise to be judged, and either rewarded with eternal life or be condemned

Many of those who sleep in the dusty ground will awake – some to everlasting life, and others to shame and everlasting abhorrence.

[DANIEL 12:2](#)

The Final Judgment (II): The Process

God will judge all people through Jesus Christ

[PAUL:] God will judge the secrets of human hearts, according to my gospel through Christ Jesus. [ROMANS 2:16B](#)

On his return, Jesus Christ will judge and reward all people according to what they have done

For the Son of Man will come with his angels in the glory of his Father, and then he will reward each person according to what he has done. [MATTHEW 16:27](#)

Those who have believed in Christ will have eternal life . . .

But these [miracles of Jesus] are recorded so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name. [JOHN 20:31](#)

. . . Those who have rejected Christ will be condemned

The one who does not believe has been condemned already, because he has not believed in the name of the one and only Son of God. [JOHN 3:18B](#)

This and the above subsections show that people will be judged according to their deeds and their response to Jesus Christ.

What people have known will be taken into account

For all who have sinned apart from the law will also perish apart from the law, and all who have sinned under the law will be judged by the law. ROMANS 2:12

Gentiles without knowledge of the Mosaic Law, by nature have a grasp of its requirements (cf. vv. 14–15) and will be judged as such (v. 12a). Those who know the law have a clearer understanding of what God requires, and so they will be judged more strictly (v. 12b).

The Millennium

The prophecy of a thousand year reign of Jesus Christ

They [believers who had been martyred] came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. ⁵(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were finished.) This is the first resurrection. REVELATION 20:4B–5

Revelation 20:1–6 is critical to the concept of “The Millennium”. Each of verses 2–6 refers to a thousand year period – a millennium. This millennium is also arguably referred to by numerous OT passages (cf. *II. God's Plans for Israel*, p. 180) and possibly a few other NT ones.

The two most popular interpretations of this “Millennium” today are the Amillennialist and Premillennialist viewpoints. Amillennialists view the reign of deceased believers with Christ (cf. Revelation 20:4b ↑) to refer to a present reign in heaven. They see this reign as having been introduced by Jesus Christ's first coming, with him being pronounced Lord of all. They believe that Jesus Christ will return, and then the general resurrection will occur, followed by the final judgment. Following this would be the reign of Jesus Christ over the new earth in the afterlife.

Premillennialists believe that Christ's return will be followed by a first resurrection of believers, who will reign with Christ in a literal thousand-year rule of righteousness on earth. This would then be followed by the final resurrection and then the final judgment.

II. The Afterlife

The believer's hope is largely based on God's wonderful promises for his people concerning the afterlife, the life begun by their resurrection from death. At the center of these promises is the final, everlasting phase of God's relationship with his people. In contrast to these wonderful promises are the teachings about the horrific eternity that the ungodly face.

The New Creation

The present heavens and earth will pass away

[JESUS:] *Heaven and earth will pass away ...* MATTHEW 24:35A

God will create new heavens and a new earth

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] But, according to his [God's] promise, *we are waiting for new heavens and a new earth, in which righteousness truly resides.* 2 PETER 3:13

God's people will live in the new Jerusalem

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION:] *Then I saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, dressed like a bride ready for her husband. ...* ²⁷*Nothing unclean, no one who does anything detestable, and no liars will ever enter it. Only those whose names are written in the lamb's Book of Life will enter it.* REVELATION 21:2, 27 GW

Eternal Life

As God raised Christ from the dead, God will raise his people

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Now God indeed raised the Lord and he will raise us by his power.* 1 CORINTHIANS 6:14

On Christ's return, their bodies will be made imperishable, glorious and spiritual – like Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *It is the same with the resurrection of the dead. What is sown [one's natural body] is perishable, what is raised is*

imperishable. ⁴³*It is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory; it is sown in weakness, it is raised in power;* ⁴⁴*it is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body. ...* ⁴⁹*And just as we have borne the image of the man of dust [Adam], let us also bear the image of the man of heaven [Christ].*

1 CORINTHIANS 15:42–44, 49

As such, God's people will be given eternal life

[JUDE, TO BELIEVERS:] Keep yourselves in God's love as you *wait for the Lord Jesus Christ with his mercy to give you life forever.* JUDE 1:21 NCV™

The Heavenly State of God's People

God's people will enter the kingdom of God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] All of this shows that God judges fairly and that *he is making you fit to share in his kingdom* for which you are suffering. 2 THESSALONIANS 1:5 CEV

God's people will be made perfect

[PAUL:] Not that I have already attained this – that is, *I have not already been perfected* – but I strive to lay hold of that for which Christ Jesus also laid hold of me. PHILIPPIANS 3:12

Paul implies that believers will be made perfect.

God's people will have glory

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] I make this appeal as a spiritual leader who also witnessed Christ's sufferings and *will share in the glory that will be revealed.* 1 PETER 5:1B GW

God's people will have great joy

[JUDE, TO BELIEVERS:] Now to him [God] who is able to keep you from stumbling and *to present you blameless before the presence of his glory with great joy, ...* JUDE 1:24 ESV

Being with God

God's people will be with God and Jesus Christ forever

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION:] *Now God's presence is with people, and he will live with them, and they will be his people. God himself will be with them and will be their God.* REVELATION 21:3B NCV™

And so we [believers] *will always be with the Lord.* 1 THESSALONIANS 4:17B

God's people will see God

They will see his face, and his name will be written on their foreheads. REVELATION 22:4 NCV™

God's people will praise God . . .

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION OF BELIEVERS IN HEAVEN:] *Then I heard what seemed to be a large crowd that sounded like a roaring flood and loud thunder all mixed together. They were saying, "Praise the Lord! Our Lord God All-Powerful now rules as king.* REVELATION 19:6 CEV

Presumably such praise of God will continue throughout eternity.

. . . and God's people will serve God

[JOHN, SPEAKING OF BELIEVERS IN HEAVEN:] *For this reason they are before the throne of God, and they serve him day and night in his temple, and the one seated on the throne will shelter them.*

REVELATION 7:15

The Punishment for the Ungodly

The ungodly will be separated from God and Jesus Christ

[JESUS:] *Then I will declare to them [who do not do God's will], 'I never knew you. Go away from me, you lawbreakers!'* MATTHEW 7:23

The ungodly will be thrown into fire

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION:] *This is the second death – the lake of fire. ¹⁵If anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, that person was thrown into the lake of fire.* REVELATION 20:14B–15

Part D.

God and His Own People

16. The Standing of God's People

I. Basics

Prologue: God Draws People to Himself.....	144
God's People Belong to God	145
God's People Are His Family	145
God's People Are His Church.....	146

II. Being 'in' Jesus Christ

God's People Are 'in' Jesus Christ.....	147
The Significance of Being 'in' Jesus Christ.....	148
God's People Are One Body 'in' Jesus Christ.....	149
Epilogue: God's People Relate to God through Christ.....	149

I. Basics

This chapter looks at the standing or position of God's people in relationship to God. Probably the most basic aspect of this is that they belong to God, as his people. As such the relationship between believers and God is both a strong one and a close one. This is underlined by them being his family and also his church.

Prologue: God Draws People to Himself

God chooses people (to be his people)

[JESUS:] If the Lord had not shortened those days, no one would be saved. But for the sake of *the elect whom he has chosen*, he has shortened those days. MARK 13:20 ISV

These verses illustrate that the Bible teaches that God chooses some people to be his, and so to be saved. Yet the Bible also teaches that God desires and provides for the salvation of all people (cf. *God invites all people to come to him and be saved*, p. 188). In coming to terms with this "tension" in Scripture, bear in mind that as the Bible teaches both "sides", the truth lies in both of them, as opposed to a position that is a compromise of both.

God moves people to believe and turn to Jesus Christ

[JESUS:] *No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him*, and I will raise him up at the last day. JOHN 6:44

But among them [believers] were some men from Cyprus and Cyrene who came to Antioch and began talking to the Hellenistic Jews too, proclaiming the Lord Jesus. ²¹*The hand of the Lord was with them, and a large number of people believed and turned to the Lord.* ²²When the church in Jerusalem heard this news, they sent Barnabas all the way to Antioch. ²³When he arrived, *he rejoiced to see what the grace of God had done ...* ACTS 11:20–23A ISV

The people's belief and turning to the Lord (v. 21b) is attributed to neither how the message was presented nor the people's own initiative, but to the "hand of the Lord" (v. 21a) – evidencing "the grace of God" (v. 23).

God's People Belong to God

God's people belong to him

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] However, you are chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, *people who belong to God*. [1 PETER 2:9A](#) GW

For they are God's people . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *God loves you and has chosen you as his own special people*. [COLOSSIANS 3:12A](#) CEV

. . . and God is their God

[ABIJAH, KING OF JUDAH:] *But as for us, the LORD is our God and we have not rejected him*. [2 CHRONICLES 13:10A](#)

God's people likewise belong to Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] If we live, it is for the Lord that we live, and if we die, it is for the Lord that we die. So *whether we live or die, we belong to the Lord*. [ROMANS 14:8](#) GNT

God's People Are His Family

Each believer belongs to the family of God

[PAUL, TO NON-JEWISH BELIEVERS:] Now you who are not Jewish are not foreigners or strangers any longer, but are citizens together with God's holy people. *You belong to God's family*. [EPHESIANS 2:19](#) NCV™

God is their Father

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] To all those loved by God in Rome, called to be saints: Grace and peace to you from *God our Father* and the Lord Jesus Christ! [ROMANS 1:7](#)

They are God's children

But to all who have received him [Jesus Christ] – those who believe in his name – *he has given the right to become God's children*¹³ – *children not born by human parents or by human desire or a husband's decision, but by God*. [JOHN 1:12–13](#)

Those who accept Jesus and believe in him (v. 12a) are enabled to become God's children (v. 12b) – born of God (v. 13) into spiritual life.

As God's children, they are also heirs of God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *And if children, then heirs (namely, heirs of God and also fellow heirs with Christ) – if indeed we suffer with him so we may also be glorified with him.* [ROMANS 8:17](#)

God's People Are His Church

See also: [26. Being One Body](#), p. 229

God's people form his church

[PAUL, TO THE EPHESIAN CHURCH LEADERS:] Watch out for yourselves and for all the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to *shepherd the church of God* that he obtained with the blood of his own Son. [ACTS 20:28](#)

The term "church" denotes an assembly or body of believers that belong to God. Additionally, it can be used more generally of God's people as a whole – the worldwide church.

The church is God's temple, in which God dwells by his Spirit

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN CHURCH:] Do you not know that *you are God's temple and that God's Spirit lives in you?* [1 CORINTHIANS 3:16](#)

He [Jesus Christ] is the one who holds the whole building together and *makes it grow into a sacred temple dedicated to the Lord.* ²²*In union with him you too are being built together with all the others into a place where God lives through his Spirit.* [EPHESIANS 2:21–22](#) GNT

Jesus Christ is the ruler of God's church

But *Christ is faithful as a son over God's house.* [HEBREWS 3:6A](#)

This speaks of Jesus Christ being "in charge" (CEV, GNT, NLT) of God's house or church – i.e. its ruler or Lord.

II. Being 'in' Jesus Christ

Arguably the most fundamental change in the standing of God's people in relationship to him that followed what Jesus Christ accomplished, is that they are now "in" Jesus Christ. Being "in" Jesus Christ involves the association or correlation of believers with Jesus Christ, by which God views them in association with his Son.

It is based on, or at least connected with, their spiritual union with Jesus Christ – in which they participate with him in such things as: his victory over sin and death; his life; and other blessings he has secured. (See also the comment below in *God's people are united with Jesus Christ*.) As such it has great significance in the relationship of believers to God.

Note that expressions like "in Jesus Christ" sometimes have other meanings, such as "through Jesus Christ". While the verses in this section have been interpreted here as using such expressions to speak of believers being "in" Jesus Christ, in some instances the meaning is debatable.

God's People Are 'in' Jesus Christ

God's people are "in" Jesus Christ

From Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, to the saints [in Ephesus], *the faithful in Christ Jesus*. [EPHESIANS 1:1](#)

Jesus Christ identifies himself with God's people

Then the King will answer, 'I tell you the truth, *anything you did for even the least of my people here, you also did for me.*' [MATTHEW 25:40](#) NCV™

The King in this parable represents Jesus Christ himself. Commentators generally interpret "my people" to be referring to Christians.

God's people live with Jesus Christ

[PAUL:] For we also are weak in him, but *we will live together with him*, because of God's power toward you. [2 CORINTHIANS 13:4B](#)

The Significance of Being 'in' Jesus Christ

Generally speaking at least, the spiritual standing and blessings that believers have are based on them being "in" Jesus Christ. As referred to earlier, this means that they are granted by God the standing and blessings that Jesus Christ has attained on behalf of those so associated with him.

"In" Jesus Christ God's people are redeemed and forgiven . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] He delivered us from the power of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of *the Son he loves*, ¹⁴*in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.* [COLOSSIANS 1:13–14](#)

. . . "In" Jesus Christ they have righteousness

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] God made the one who did not know sin to be sin for us, so *that in him we would become the righteousness of God.* [2 CORINTHIANS 5:21](#)

"In" Jesus Christ believers share in the righteousness of God (cf. GNT).

"In" Jesus Christ believers are identified with him in his death, resurrection and life

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *In him you also were circumcised* – not, however, with a circumcision performed by human hands, but *by the removal of the fleshly body, that is, through the circumcision done by Christ.* ¹²*Having been buried with him in baptism, you also have been raised with him through your faith in the power of God who raised him from the dead.* ¹³And even though you were dead in your transgressions and in the uncircumcision of your flesh, *he [God] nevertheless made you alive with him [Christ], having forgiven all your transgressions.* [COLOSSIANS 2:11–13](#)

Verses 11–12 speak of one's sinful nature being cut off through one being buried and raised with Christ. Following on from this, Paul speaks of believers being given life with Christ (v. 13).

God's People Are One Body 'in' Jesus Christ

All believers – including Jews and Gentiles, slaves and free – are one body “in” Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female – for all of you are one in Christ Jesus.* GALATIANS 3:28

Oneness in Jesus Christ takes primacy over all distinctions. In him “there is no difference” (GNT, NCV) between contrasting groups such as Jews and Gentiles, slaves and free people, and males and females. For no group is spiritually superior to another, and all are equal before God (cf. Ephesians 6:8–9). Note that the use of “Greek”, as opposed to “Jew”, appears to denote all Gentiles.

The church is in fact the body of Christ

Now *the church is his body, the fullness of him* who fills all in all.

EPHESIANS 1:23

The description of the church as the “body” of Christ figuratively depicts the spiritual union of Jesus Christ with his people, and points to the oneness that his people have together in their relationship to Christ.

Jesus Christ is the head of the body

He is the head of the body, the church, as well as the beginning, the firstborn from among the dead, so that he himself may become first in all things. COLOSSIANS 1:18

Epilogue: God's People Relate to God through Christ

Jesus Christ's death and priesthood have opened the way into God's presence for God's people

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] So, brothers and sisters, *we are completely free to enter the Most Holy Place without fear because of the blood of Jesus' death.* ²⁰*We can enter through a new and living way that Jesus opened for us. It leads through the curtain—Christ's body.* ²¹*And since we have a great priest over God's house,* ²²*let us come near to*

God with a sincere heart and a sure faith, because we have been made free from a guilty conscience, and our bodies have been washed with pure water. **HEBREWS 10:19–22** NCV™

The reference to Jesus Christ's body as "the curtain" (v. 20) is drawing a parallel between: his death which opened a way for believers to confidently enter into God's presence; and the curtain which the high priest went through to enter the Most Holy Place of God's presence, in the tabernacle and later in the temple.

God's people have access to God through Jesus Christ – by the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *It is through Christ that all of us, Jews and Gentiles, are able to come in the one Spirit into the presence of the Father.* **EPHESIANS 2:18** GNT

Verses such as this which speak of God's people relating to God (e.g. praying to him) "through" Jesus Christ, appear to have in view one or more of the following three concepts: Jesus Christ's death opening the way into God's presence; Jesus Christ's priesthood; and God's people being "in" Jesus Christ. All three are aspects of Jesus Christ's mediatory role in a believer's relationship with God.

Remember the persecuted

17. Keys to God’s Interaction with His People

I. Basics

God Is Always with His People	152
God Knows His People	153
God Loves and Is Faithful to His People.....	153
God Shows Grace to His People.....	154

II. God’s Holy Spirit in His People

God Gives the Holy Spirit to His People.....	155
God Works in His People through the Holy Spirit.....	156
The Holy Spirit Renews God’s People	156
The Holy Spirit Helps God’s People	157

I. Basics

This section looks at some basic factors underlying God's interaction with his people. They show that God's relationship with his people is not an aloof, impersonal one – far from it. God is always with his people and they can actually know him. Complementary to this is God's great love and steadfast faithfulness towards his people. Undergirding all God's interaction with his people is his truly amazing grace.

God Is Always with His People

God and Jesus Christ are always with their people

[GOD:] *Just as I was with Moses, so I will be with you. I will not leave you or forsake you.* JOSHUA 1:5B ESV

[JESUS:] *And remember, I am with you always, to the end of the age.* MATTHEW 28:20B

Note that most of what this and the following chapters in *Part D. God and His Own People* say about God is also applicable to Jesus Christ.

God is with his people wherever they go . . .

Do not be frightened, and do not be dismayed, for *the LORD your God is with you wherever you go.* JOSHUA 1:9B ESV

. . . and God also goes before them

The LORD himself will go before you. He will be with you; he will not leave you or forget you. Don't be afraid and don't worry. DEUTERONOMY 31:8 NCV™

God is with his people in trouble – and sees them through it

God is our refuge and strength, *an ever-present help in times of trouble.* PSALMS 46:1 GW

[GOD:] *When you pass through the waters, I am with you; when you pass through the streams, they will not overwhelm you. When you walk through the fire, you will not be burned; the flames will not harm you.* ISAIAH 43:2

God Knows His People

God and Jesus Christ know their people

The LORD said to Moses, “I will do this thing also that you have requested, for you have found favor in my sight, and *I know you by name.*” [EXODUS 33:17](#)

[JESUS, SPEAKING OF HIMSELF AS “THE GOOD SHEPHERD”:] *He calls his own sheep by name and leads them out. ...* ¹⁴“I am the good shepherd. *I know my own and my own know me – ...* [JOHN 10:3B, 14](#)

In Exodus 33:17, “I know you by name” indicates: intimate knowledge – “I know you very well” (GNT, NCV); and a personal relationship – “I know you personally” (AMP); “you are my friend” (NLT, cf. CEV). A similar comment could probably be made regarding the like expression in John 10:3b.

God and Jesus also know all their people's needs and troubles

Do not be like them, for *your Father knows what you need before you ask him.* [MATTHEW 6:8](#)

[JESUS CHRIST, TO THE CHURCH IN EPHESUS:] *I know the distress you are suffering and your poverty (but you are rich). I also know the slander against you by those who call themselves Jews and really are not, but are a synagogue of Satan.* [REVELATION 2:9](#)

God Loves and Is Faithful to His People

God loves his people greatly

[DAVID, TO GOD:] You are good to us and forgiving, *full of constant love for all who pray to you.* [PSALMS 86:5](#) GNT

Wicked people have many troubles, but *the LORD's love surrounds those who trust him.* [PSALMS 32:10](#) NCV™

God's love is with his people always

[GOD, SPEAKING OF DAVID:] *My steadfast love I will keep for him forever, and my covenant will stand firm for him.* [PSALMS 89:28](#) ESV

God's love is “steadfast” – constant and reliable.

God is faithful to his people

The LORD always proves faithful and reliable to those who follow the demands of his covenant. [PSALMS 25:10](#)

God faithfully keeps his promises to his people

Not one of the LORD's faithful promises to the family of Israel was left unfulfilled; every one was realized. [JOSHUA 21:45](#)

God Shows Grace to His People

What God does for his people is based on his "grace" – his free and undeserved favour. God's grace in the believer's salvation is discussed earlier (cf. *As such, we are justified and made righteous by God's grace, through Jesus Christ – not by law . . .*, p. 126; . . . *We are saved by God's grace rather than by works*, p. 127). This section speaks of the ongoing role of God's grace in his people's lives.

God shows much grace towards his people

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIANS:] *And in their [needy believers'] prayers on your behalf they long for you because of the extraordinary grace God has shown to you.* [2 CORINTHIANS 9:14](#)

Here Paul speaks of God's grace in moving the Corinthians to generously give towards supporting needy believers.

By grace God's people are given spiritual blessings

Out of the fullness of his [Christ's] grace he has blessed us all, giving us one blessing after another. [JOHN 1:16](#) GNT

By grace God's people are strengthened

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] *Do not let all kinds of strange teachings lead you from the right way. It is good to receive inner strength from God's grace, and not by obeying rules about foods; those who obey these rules have not been helped by them.* [HEBREWS 13:9](#) GNT

II. God's Holy Spirit in His People

God's incomparable gift of his Holy Spirit is critical to God's relationship with each of his people – including God's work in and through them. In part at least, this is due to the Holy Spirit being the prime means by which God renews and helps believers.

God Gives the Holy Spirit to His People

God gives his people his Holy Spirit, to live in them

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] And hope does not disappoint, because the love of God has been poured out in our hearts through *the Holy Spirit who was given to us*. ROMANS 5:5

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] Protect that good thing [the truth] entrusted to you, through *the Holy Spirit who lives within us*. 2 TIMOTHY 1:14

Having the Holy Spirit shows a person is one of God's people . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] For you did not receive the spirit of slavery leading again to fear, but *you received the Spirit of adoption, by whom we cry, "Abba, Father."* ¹⁶*The Spirit himself bears witness to our spirit that we are God's children.* ROMANS 8:15–16

The Spirit testifies to believers that they are God's children (v. 16). Accordingly, by the Spirit they call God "Abba" or Father (v. 15).

. . . and having the Holy Spirit indicates that God lives in them

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] Now *by this we know that God resides in us: by the Spirit he has given us*. 1 JOHN 3:24B

Having the Spirit of God verifies that God himself lives in us.

The Holy Spirit is God's seal, guaranteeing what is to come

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *When you believed in him you were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, ¹⁴who is the guarantee of our inheritance until the redemption of God's own possession, to his praise and glory.* EPHESIANS 1:13B–14 ISV

God's "own possession" refers to believers, who have been marked as such by being given the Holy Spirit.

God Works in His People through the Holy Spirit

God saves his people through the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *God chose you from the beginning for salvation through sanctification by the Spirit and faith in the truth.*

2 THESSALONIANS 2:13B

God teaches his people through the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But just as it is written, “Things that no eye has seen, or ear heard, or mind imagined, are the things God has prepared for those who love him.” ¹⁰*God has revealed these to us by the Spirit.* For the Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God. 1 CORINTHIANS 2:9–10

God works through his people by the Holy Spirit

[GOD, TO ZERUBBABEL WHO WAS A LEADER OF THE JEWS:] ‘Not by strength and not by power, *but by my Spirit,*’ says the LORD who rules over all.” ⁷“What are you, you great mountain? Because of Zerubbabel you will become a level plain! And he will bring forth the temple capstone with shoutings of ‘Grace! Grace!’ because of this.” ZECHARIAH 4:6B–7

God would accomplish the work he was doing through Zerubbabel by his Spirit. Mountainous problems would be overcome and Zerubbabel would “bring forth the temple capstone” (v. 7b) signifying the completion of the work (the rebuilding of the temple).

The Holy Spirit Renews God’s People

The Holy Spirit brings spiritual life

[JESUS:] *The Spirit is the one who gives life; human nature is of no help! The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.*

JOHN 6:63

Particularly in light of the verse’s first clause, the final statement may indicate that the words Jesus spoke were from (cf. CEV) or spoken through the Holy Spirit. As such they are words that the Holy Spirit uses to produce life – when people live according to them.

The Holy Spirit makes God's people holy

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] God the Father decided to choose you as his people, and *his Spirit has made you holy*. 1 PETER 1:2A CEV

The Holy Spirit produces spiritual "fruit" in God's people

But *the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, ²³gentleness, and self-control*. Against such things there is no law. GALATIANS 5:22–23

The Holy Spirit Helps God's People

The Holy Spirit helps them

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] In the same way, *the Spirit helps us in our weakness, for we do not know how we should pray, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with inexpressible groanings*. ROMANS 8:26

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] I will ask the Father, and *he will give you another Helper to be with you forever— ¹⁷the Spirit of truth*. JOHN 14:16–17A NCV™

The Holy Spirit leads God's people

Those who are led by God's Spirit are God's children. ROMANS 8:14 GNT

The Holy Spirit may lead a person by an inner conviction or sense of assurance, by circumstances, or even by a discernible revelation. (Giving such a revelation to a person with a prophetic spiritual gift is one way the Holy Spirit leads and directs Christian groups.)

The Holy Spirit empowers God's people to do God's work . . .

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the farthest parts of the earth*.

ACTS 1:8

Through the Holy Spirit the disciples would receive "power (ability, efficiency, and might)" (AMP), enabling them to witness for Christ far and wide.

. . . The Holy Spirit has a key role in what God's people say

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] You will be brought before governors and kings because of me, to testify to them and to the gentiles. ¹⁹When they hand you over, don't worry about how you are to speak or what you are to say, because *in that hour what you are to say will be given to you*. ²⁰*It won't be you speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you.* MATTHEW 10:18–20 ISV

When they [the believers] had prayed, the place where they were assembled together was shaken, and *they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak the word of God courageously.* ACTS 4:31

Remember the persecuted

18. God's Transformation of His People

I. General

God Makes His People Spiritually Alive.....	160
God Makes His People Holy.....	161
God Teaches His People.....	162
God Disciplines His People.....	162

II. Spiritual Attributes

Love, Faith and Hope.....	164
Peace.....	165
Joy.....	164
Wisdom and Knowledge.....	166

I. General

God transforms his people by giving them the invaluable gift of spiritual life, in which they are “reborn” in a spiritual sense. Additionally, God makes them holy and accordingly begins to transform them to be like Jesus Christ and himself. God does this through such things as teaching and disciplining them.

God Makes His People Spiritually Alive

God’s people are given spiritual life

[JESUS, TO HIS FOLLOWERS:] *The Spirit is the one who gives life; human nature is of no help! The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life.* JOHN 6:63

Jesus’ words together with the Holy Spirit bring life. This spiritual life involves being “alive to God” (Romans 6:11) and comes through having God’s Holy Spirit. Each believer has the Holy Spirit dwelling in them, renewing and nourishing them spiritually. Consequently believers have a spiritual consciousness that enables them to live in communion with and in dependence on God. As such they are “alive to God”.

In union with Jesus Christ, their sinful selves have “died” and they are now spiritually alive

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *We know that the persons we used to be were nailed to the cross with Jesus. This was done, so that our sinful bodies would no longer be the slaves of sin. ⁷We know that sin doesn’t have power over dead people. ⁸As surely as we died with Christ, we believe we will also live with him. ... ¹¹... Christ Jesus has given life to you, and you live for God.* ROMANS 6:6–8, 11B CEV

In our union with Jesus Christ we are identified with him in his death and resurrection. In a spiritual sense our old sinful selves have died with him in his death and we have been made alive spiritually with him in his post-resurrection life.

As such, God's people are spiritually reborn of God . . .

But to all who have received him [Jesus] – those who believe in his name – he has given the right to become God's children ¹³– *children not born by human parents or by human desire or a husband's decision, but by God.* JOHN 1:12–13

References to being born by God (v. 13) – or born again – refer to the spiritual rebirth people undergo when they come to faith, and by which they have spiritual life. It is accomplished by God through the work of the Holy Spirit within a person's heart or mind, along with exposure to God's word. This spiritual birth means that believers are in a real sense children of God. It also begins a process of growing more like God, as believers share in his Spirit which transforms them.

. . . God's people are a new creation

So then, *if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation; what is old has passed away – look, what is new has come!* 2 CORINTHIANS 5:17

God Makes His People Holy

Being made holy concerns being set apart for God - dedicated to him, for such purposes as doing his work and worshiping him. This involves them being made pure from sin.

Being made holy has a couple of phases or facets. Firstly, when a person comes to faith their sins are forgiven and as such they are holy. Secondly, believers are made holy in that they are continually being transformed by God, becoming more like Jesus Christ and increasingly devoid of sin. This process is often referred to as "sanctification".

God makes them holy

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Now may the God of peace himself make you completely holy and may your spirit and soul and body be kept entirely blameless* at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁴He who calls you is trustworthy, and *he will in fact do this.*

1 THESSALONIANS 5:23–24

God's people are primarily made holy through Jesus' sacrifice

So Jesus also suffered outside the city to make his people holy with his own blood. [HEBREWS 13:12](#) NCV™

God's people are in fact being transformed to be like Jesus

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *We all show the Lord's glory, and we are being changed to be like him.* [2 CORINTHIANS 3:18B](#) NCV™

Paul has the development of the believer's sanctification in view, with their characters growing more like Christ. As such believers increasingly reflect and even manifest Christ's glory.

God Teaches His People

God also teaches his people how to live

He shows those who are humble how to do right, and he teaches them his ways. [PSALMS 25:9](#) NCV™

[GOD:] *I will instruct you and teach you in the way you should go; I will counsel you with my eye upon you.* [PSALMS 32:8](#) ESV

God enables his people to know the truth

Then Jesus said to those Judeans who had believed him, *"If you continue to follow my teaching, you are really my disciples³² and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."* [JOHN 8:31-32](#)

God Disciplines His People

God disciplines his people as his children, who he loves

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] *And have you forgotten the exhortation addressed to you as sons? "My son, do not scorn the Lord's discipline or give up when he corrects you. ⁶For the Lord disciplines the one he loves and chastises every son he accepts." ⁷Endure your suffering as discipline; God is treating you as sons. For what son is there that a father does not discipline? ⁸But if you do not experience discipline, something all sons have shared in, then you are illegitimate and are not sons.* [HEBREWS 12:5-8](#)

God's discipline is done in righteousness and faithfulness

[LEVITES, PRAYING TO GOD AND MAKING REFERENCE TO FOREFATHERS:] You prolonged your kindness with them for many years, and you solemnly admonished them by your Spirit through your prophets. *Still they paid no attention, so you delivered them into the hands of the neighboring peoples.* ³¹*However, due to your abundant mercy you did not do away with them altogether; you did not abandon them. For you are a merciful and compassionate God. ...* ³³*You are righteous with regard to all that has happened to us, for you have acted faithfully.* It is we who have been in the wrong! [NEHEMIAH 9:30–31, 33](#)

As well as speaking of his patience and mercy, vv. 30–31 beautifully illustrate God's righteousness and faithfulness in his discipline and dealings with his people, affirmed in v. 33.

God's discipline and testing can be intense, but God brings his people through

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *You have put us to the test, God; as silver is purified by fire so you have tested us.* ¹¹*You let us fall into a trap and placed heavy burdens on our backs.* ¹²*You let our enemies trample over us; we went through fire and flood, but now you have brought us to a place of safety.* [PSALMS 66:10–12](#) GNT

Remember the persecuted

II. Spiritual Attributes

The spiritual attributes that God bestows on his people far exceed anything that this world can offer. Attributes or blessings such as love, hope, joy, peace and wisdom are longed for by most people, and sought after in many ways. But it is only from God that they can be gained in their highest form.

Love, Faith and Hope

God and Jesus Christ give their people love and faith . . .

Peace to the brothers and sisters [believers], and *love with faith, from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.* [EPHESIANS 6:23](#)

. . . God teaches his people to love

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *God has taught you to love each other.* [1 THESSALONIANS 4:9](#) GW

God gives his people hope by what he has done through Christ

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] Because of his [God's] great mercy *he has given us a new birth to an ever-living hope through the resurrection of Jesus, the Messiah, from the dead* ⁴and to an inheritance kept in heaven for you that can't be destroyed, corrupted, or changed. [1 PETER 1:3–4](#) ISV

Through Jesus Christ's resurrection, God has brought believers into an "ever-living hope" (v. 3). This encompasses the hope of their own resurrection and an everlasting inheritance in heaven (v. 4).

God's promises give his people hope

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] *To those who were to receive what he promised, God wanted to make it very clear that he would never change his purpose; so he added his vow to the promise.* ¹⁸*There are these two things, then, that cannot change and about which God cannot lie. So we who have found safety with him are greatly encouraged to hold firmly to the hope placed before us.* [HEBREWS 6:17–18](#) GNT

This indicates that "the hope placed before us" (v. 18) by God is based on his promise that is referred to and his confirmation of it with an oath – the "two things... that cannot change" (v. 18).

Peace

The OT speaks of God giving inner peace (including being at ease) and outer peace (the absence of war and adversity). In addition to peace with God, the NT speaks of God (and Jesus Christ) giving an inner, spiritual peace – even amidst adversity.

God gives his people peace . . .

... the LORD blesses his people with peace. [PSALMS 29:11B](#) NCV™

. . . Likewise, Jesus Christ gives them peace

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *Peace I leave with you; my peace I give to you; I do not give it to you as the world does. Do not let your hearts be distressed or lacking in courage.* [JOHN 14:27](#)

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] I have told you these things so that *in me you may have peace*. In the world you have trouble and suffering, but take courage – I have conquered the world. [JOHN 16:33](#)

Because Jesus Christ has overcome the world, in him believers have peace amidst the trouble that the world causes them.

It is a great peace

The LORD gives perfect peace to those whose faith is firm. [ISAIAH 26:3](#) CEV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in every situation, through prayer and petition with thanksgiving, tell your requests to God. *⁷And the peace of God that surpasses all understanding will guard your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.* [PHILIPPIANS 4:6–7](#)

Joy

God and Jesus Christ give joy to their people

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Now *may the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you believe in him, so that you may abound in hope by the power of the Holy Spirit.* [ROMANS 15:13](#)

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *I have told you these things so that my joy may be in you, and your joy may be complete.* [JOHN 15:11](#)

It is an enduring joy . . .

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] So also you have sorrow now, but I will see you again, and *your hearts will rejoice, and no one will take your joy away from you.* JOHN 16:22

. . . It is present even in trouble

They [churches in Macedonia] *have been severely tested by the troubles they went through; but their joy was so great that they were extremely generous in their giving, even though they are very poor.*

2 CORINTHIANS 8:2 GNT

Wisdom and Knowledge

God gives his people wisdom and knowledge

But if anyone is deficient in wisdom, he should ask God, who gives to all generously and without reprimand, and it will be given to him.

JAMES 1:5

He [Jesus] answered them, “*You have been given knowledge about the secrets of the kingdom of heaven ...* MATTHEW 13:11A ISV

God’s people are in fact given spiritual sight

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] I pray that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give you spiritual wisdom and revelation in your growing knowledge of him,¹⁸ – *since the eyes of your heart have been enlightened* – so that you may know what is the hope of his calling, what is the wealth of his glorious inheritance in the saints,¹⁹ and what is the incomparable greatness of his power toward us who believe, as displayed in the exercise of his immense strength.

EPHESIANS 1:17–19

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *Open my eyes so I can truly see the marvelous things in your law!* PSALMS 119:18

God opens his people’s eyes to spiritual truth.

19. God's Care of His People

I. God's Saving of His People

God's Capacity to Save His People.....	168
God Saves His People – from All Things	169
God Helps His People against Enemies.....	170

II. God's Preservation of His People

God Meets His People's Needs.....	172
God Strengthens His People.....	173
God Protects His People.....	174

I. God's Saving of His People

See also: *13. Salvation through Jesus Christ*, p. 117

God has the capacity to save his people always – no matter what the circumstances. Thus God can save his people from all things – and ultimately he does. The Bible contains both examples of God saving his people and promises of him continuing to do so.

In reading this chapter about God's saving his people, bear in mind that the Bible also speaks of God's people experiencing sufferings common to all people (cf. *39. Hard Times*, p. 337) and also persecution for their faith (cf. *40. Persecution*, p. 345). God can and does save and preserve his people, but also does allow or even ordain difficult experiences for his people – often for reasons that may not be clear.

Promises given in the OT of God saving and preserving his people are still very much relevant under the new covenant – as is reflected in a number of NT passages. But they are more applicable in a spiritual sense – in keeping with the greater spiritual nature of the second covenant in contrast to the often more tangible aspects of the first covenant.

God's Capacity to Save His People

God is able to save his people – no matter what the odds

[SHADRACH, MESHACH AND ABEDNEGO TO KING NEBUCHADNEZZAR:] *If you throw us into the blazing furnace, the God we serve is able to save us from the furnace. He will save us from your power, O king.*

DANIEL 3:17 NCV™

Nothing can prevent the LORD from delivering, whether by many or by a few. 1 SAMUEL 14:6B

God has mighty power to save his people

The LORD your God is with you; *the mighty One will save you.*

ZEPHANIAH 3:17A NCV™

Then with his mighty power he led them out [of captivity in Egypt], ...

ACTS 13:17B CEV

God does not need to use any other means but himself

[GOD:] But I will show pity to the people of Judah. *I will save them, but not by using bows or swords, horses or horsemen, or weapons of war. I, the LORD their God, will save them.* HOSEA 1:7 NCV™

Here God speaks of saving his people by no other power but himself.

God Saves His People – from All Things

God is the Savior of his people

[DAVID, TO GOD:] Guide me in your truth, and teach me, *my God, my Savior.* I trust you all day long. PSALMS 25:5 NCV™

God saves them out of all troubles

[DAVID:] I sought the LORD'S help and he answered me; *he delivered me from all my fears.* ⁵Those who look to him for help are happy; their faces are not ashamed. ⁶This oppressed man cried out and the LORD heard; *he saved him from all his troubles.* ... ¹⁷The godly cry out and the LORD hears; *he saves them from all their troubles.* ... ¹⁹*The godly face many dangers, but the LORD saves them from each one of them.* PSALMS 34:4–6, 17, 19

[PAUL:] However, the Lord stood by me and gave me strength so that through me the message might be fully proclaimed and all the gentiles could hear it. *I was rescued out of a lion's mouth.* ¹⁸*The Lord will rescue me from every evil attack and will take me safely to his heavenly kingdom.* Glory belongs to him forever and ever! Amen.
2 TIMOTHY 4:17–18 ISV

Christ had rescued Paul from physical danger (v. 17) – in fact he had done so many times (cf. 3:11). However in light of vv. 6–8 which indicate that Paul's death was near, it appears that in v. 18 Paul is not this time referring to a physical rescue but a spiritual one – where the Lord would bring him "safely to his heavenly kingdom".

God sets them free from things that imprison

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] LORD, I am your servant; I am your servant and the son of your female servant. *You have freed me from my chains.* PSALMS 116:16 NCV™

God's saving of his people makes known that he is the only God

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *Or has any god ever tried to come and take one nation away from another for himself? The LORD your God used his mighty hand and powerful arm to do this for you in Egypt. He did this using plagues, miraculous signs, amazing things, and war. He did his great and awe-inspiring deeds in front of you.* ³⁵*You were shown these things so that you would know that the LORD is God. There is no other god.* DEUTERONOMY 4:34–35 GW

God Helps His People against Enemies

God consistently helps his people

God is our refuge and strength, *an ever-present help in times of trouble.* PSALMS 46:1 GW

[PAUL:] *I have experienced help from God to this day ...* ACTS 26:22A

God helps his people by delivering them from enemies . . .

The LORD helps them and rescues them; he rescues them from evil men and delivers them, for they seek his protection. PSALMS 37:40

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] So we can say with confidence, *“The Lord is my helper, and I will not be afraid. What can man do to me?”* HEBREWS 13:6

. . . For God fights for his people, giving victory over enemies

He [Jahaziel, a Levite] said: “Pay attention, all you people of Judah, residents of Jerusalem, and King Jehoshaphat! This is what the LORD says to you: ‘Don’t be afraid and don’t panic because of this huge army! *For the battle is not yours, but God’s. ...* ¹⁷*You will not fight in this battle. Take your positions, stand, and watch the LORD deliver you, O Judah and Jerusalem. Don’t be afraid and don’t panic! Tomorrow march out toward them; the LORD is with you!’” ...* ²²*When they began to shout and praise, the LORD suddenly attacked the Ammonites, Moabites, and men from Mount Seir who were invading Judah, and they were defeated. ...* ²⁹*All the kingdoms of the surrounding lands were afraid of God when they heard how the LORD had fought against Israel’s enemies.* 2 CHRONICLES 20:15, 17, 22, 29

God enables his people to overcome all that is in the world . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] What then shall we say about these things? *If God is for us, who can be against us? ...* ³⁵*Who will separate us from the love of Christ? Will trouble, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or danger, or sword? ...* ³⁷*No, in all these things we have complete victory through him who loved us!* ROMANS 8:31, 35, 37

Verse 31b implies that if God is for us then no one can effectively oppose us. In all adversity we have complete victory through Christ (v. 37).

. . . As such, God's people are enabled to overcome Satan

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] I have written to you, young people, that you are strong, and *the word of God resides in you, and you have conquered the evil one.* 1 JOHN 2:14B

The reference to the word of God living in these believers suggests that it played a significant role in them overcoming Satan. As such this points to God enabling his people to overcome Satan.

Remember the persecuted

II. God's Preservation of His People

As with verses which speak of God's saving of his people, verses which speak of God's preservation of his people are amongst the best-loved verses in the Bible. They contain some of the Bible's great promises, which reassure us when we wonder if God has "lost our address". As such they provide good reason for God's people to trust in him and be at peace.

God Meets His People's Needs

God cares for his people

The LORD is good; he protects his people in times of trouble; *he takes care of those who turn to him.* NAHUM 1:7 GNT

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] And God will exalt you in due time, if you humble yourselves under his mighty hand ⁷by casting all your cares on him because *he cares for you.* 1 PETER 5:6-7

Note that this subsection points to the overall theme of this chapter. As such it is reflected in and pertinent to the whole chapter.

God meets his people's physical needs even in harsh situations

[LEVITES, TO GOD:] *For forty years you sustained them. Even in the desert they never lacked anything. Their clothes did not wear out and their feet did not swell.* NEHEMIAH 9:21

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *You prepare a table before me in the presence of my enemies; you anoint my head with oil; my cup overflows.* PSALMS 23:5 ESV

Even amidst adversaries, God provided for David – as implied by "prepare a table [feast] before me" and "my cup overflows".

God satisfies his people's spiritual hunger and thirst

Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they will be satisfied. MATTHEW 5:6

Jesus said to them, *"I am the bread of life. The one who comes to me will never go hungry, and the one who believes in me will never be thirsty.* JOHN 6:35

God provides for all their needs – they will not lack anything

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS WHO HAD SUPPORTED HIM:] *And my God will supply your every need according to his glorious riches in Christ Jesus.*

PHILIPPIANS 4:19

Then Jesus said to them [his disciples], *“When I sent you out with no money bag, or traveler’s bag, or sandals, you didn’t lack anything, did you?” They replied, “Nothing.”* LUKE 22:35

God Strengthens His People

God strengthens his people when they are weak

Even youths shall faint and be weary, and young men shall fall exhausted; ³but they who wait for the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings like eagles; they shall run and not be weary; they shall walk and not faint. ISAIAH 40:30–31 ESV

God strengthens his people in the face of adversity

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *You give me strength for battle; you make my foes kneel before me.* PSALMS 18:39

[PAUL:] *At my first defense no one appeared in my support; instead they all deserted me – may they not be held accountable for it. ¹⁷But the Lord stood by me and strengthened me, so that through me the message would be fully proclaimed for all the Gentiles to hear. And so I was delivered from the lion’s mouth!* 2 TIMOTHY 4:16–17

Note that in Paul’s letters “Lord” is generally understood to be a reference to Jesus Christ.

God strengthens them spiritually, until Christ’s return

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *You are being strengthened with all power according to his glorious might, so that you might patiently endure everything with joy ...* COLOSSIANS 1:11 ISV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *He will also strengthen you to the end, so that you will be blameless on the day of our Lord Jesus Christ.* 1 CORINTHIANS 1:8

God Protects His People

God protects his people

[JOSHUA, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *He continually protected us as we traveled and when we passed through nations.* JOSHUA 24:17B

God is a refuge for his people

He [David] said, *“The LORD is my rock and my fortress and my deliverer, ³my God, my rock, in whom I take refuge, my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my stronghold and my refuge, my savior; you save me from violence.* 2 SAMUEL 22:2–3 ESV

God guards his people

Look! The one who is guarding Israel neither slumbers nor sleeps. ⁵The LORD is your guardian; the LORD is your shade at your right side. ⁶The sun will not ravage you by day, nor the moon by night. ⁷The LORD will guard you from all evil, preserving your life. ⁸The LORD will guard your goings and comings, from this time on and forever. PSALMS 121:4–8 ISV

God protects his people from all evil – including Satan

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil, for you are with me; your rod and your staff, they comfort me.* PSALMS 23:4 ESV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *But the Lord is faithful, and he will strengthen you and protect you from the evil one.* 2 THESSALONIANS 3:3

God will protect his people until the end

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] *God’s power protects you through your faith until salvation is shown to you at the end of time.* 1 PETER 1:5 NCV™

God protects his faithful people from spiritual harm throughout their lives, bringing their salvation to fruition at the end of the age.

20. God's Plans for His People

I. General

God Has Plans for His People.....	176
God Fulfills His Plans for His People	177
God Works through His People.....	178
God Guides His People	179

II. God's Plans for Israel

Return to the Land.....	180
Physical Renewal and Peace.....	181
Spiritual Renewal.....	181
A Renewed Relationship with God	182
Glorification.....	182

I. General

God has wonderful plans and purposes for his people. Many of these concern the work he does through his people, with his incomparably great power. God promises to fulfill these plans and purposes, equipping and guiding his people accordingly.

God Has Plans for His People

Bear in mind that references to God's plans and purposes for his people include: general plans/purposes which apply to all Christians; and specific plans/purposes for each Christian. The various general ones – such as salvation and sanctification – are dealt with in other chapters in this book. This section looks at topics which show that God has specific plans and purposes for each of his people.

Thus the verses have largely been interpreted as such, i.e. as speaking of God having plans or purposes for specific people, or specific groups of his people. However, note that a number of the verses are also applicable to God's general plans and purposes, and arguably may even have these foremost in view.

God has plans and purposes for his people

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *You have made many wonderful plans for us. I could never speak of them all—their number is so great!* PSALMS 40:5B GNT

For David, after *he had served God's purpose in his own generation*, died and was laid to rest with his ancestors, and so he experienced decay. ACTS 13:36 ISV

These plans include work for God's people to do

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] God has made us what we are, and in our union with Christ Jesus *he has created us for a life of good deeds, which he has already prepared for us to do.* EPHESIANS 2:10 GNT

[PAUL, TO THE BELIEVERS AT CORINTH:] What is Apollos, really? Or what is Paul? Servants through whom you came to believe, and each of us in *the ministry the Lord gave us.* 1 CORINTHIANS 3:5

God's plans are not dependent upon his people's backgrounds

Amos replied to Amaziah, *"I was not a prophet by profession. No, I was a herdsman who also took care of sycamore fig trees. ¹⁵Then the LORD took me from tending flocks and gave me this commission, 'Go! Prophesy to my people Israel!'"* AMOS 7:14–15

God Fulfills His Plans for His People

In spite of his people's troubles, God will fulfill his plans and purposes for them

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Though I walk straight into trouble, you preserve my life, stretching out your hand to fight the vehemence of my enemies, and your right hand delivers me. ⁸The LORD will complete what his purpose is for me.* PSALMS 138:7–8A ISV

For the LORD says, *'Only when the seventy years of Babylonian rule are over will I again take up consideration for you. Then I will fulfill my gracious promise to you and restore you to your homeland. ¹¹For I know what I have planned for you,' says the LORD. 'I have plans to prosper you, not to harm you. I have plans to give you a future filled with hope.* JEREMIAH 29:10–11

Despite his people's exile in Babylon and the apparent decimation of Israel as a nation, God would fulfill his promise and plans for them.

God may even initiate seemingly bad things to fulfill his purposes for his people

Joseph told them to come closer to him, and when they did, he said: *Yes, I am your brother Joseph, the one you sold into Egypt. ⁵Don't worry or blame yourselves for what you did. God is the one who sent me ahead of you to save lives. ⁶There has already been a famine for two years, and for five more years no one will plow fields or harvest grain. ⁷But God sent me on ahead of you to keep your families alive and to save you in this wonderful way. ⁸After all, you weren't really the ones who sent me here—it was God.* He made me the highest official in the king's court and placed me over all Egypt.

GENESIS 45:4–8 CEV

God Works through His People

As mentioned earlier, God's plans and purposes for his people include tasks or work for his people to do for him. In fulfilling these plans and purposes, God works through his people.

God moves his people to do his work

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Keep on working with fear and trembling to complete your salvation, ¹³because *God is always at work in you to make you willing and able to obey his own purpose.* PHILIPPIANS 2:12B–13 GNT

Then the leaders of Judah and Benjamin, along with the priests and the Levites – *all those whose mind God had stirred – got ready to go up in order to build the temple of the LORD in Jerusalem.* EZRA 1:5

God equips his people for the work

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] Now may the God of peace who by the blood of the eternal covenant brought back from the dead the great shepherd of the sheep, our Lord Jesus Christ, ²¹*equip you with every good thing to do his will,* working in us what is pleasing before him through Jesus Christ, to whom be glory forever. Amen. HEBREWS 13:20–21

God helps and empowers them to do his work even if they feel inadequate

[JEREMIAH:] I answered, “*Oh, Lord God, I really do not know how to speak well enough for that, for I am too young.*” ⁷The LORD said to me, “Do not say, ‘I am too young.’ But *go to whomever I send you and say whatever I tell you.*” ⁸*Do not be afraid of those to whom I send you, for I will be with you to protect you,*” says the LORD. ⁹*Then the LORD reached out his hand and touched my mouth and said to me, “I will most assuredly give you the words you are to speak for me.*” ¹⁰*Know for certain that I hereby give you the authority to announce to nations and kingdoms that they will be uprooted and torn down, destroyed and demolished, rebuilt and firmly planted.”* JEREMIAH 1:6–10

To signify that he had given (or would give) Jeremiah his words to speak – and as part of his appointing and empowering of Jeremiah – God touched Jeremiah's mouth (v. 9). This may have occurred in a vision; some think it actually took place.

God's power for his people is great

With great power the apostles were giving testimony to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great grace was on them all.

ACTS 4:33

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *You will also know the unlimited greatness of his power as it works with might and strength for us, the believers.*

EPHESIANS 1:19 GW

God Guides His People

God guides his people always . . .

The LORD will continually lead you; he will feed you even in parched regions. ISAIAH 58:11A

He will guide us forever. PSALMS 48:14B ESV

Note that the Bible speaks of God guiding his people in fulfilling his plans and purposes for them. More specifically, it tells of God guiding them in: living righteous lives; doing his work; and making choices in other matters.

. . . As such, God guides them in difficult circumstances

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *He led you through that vast and terrifying desert where there were poisonous snakes and scorpions.*

DEUTERONOMY 8:15A GNT

[DAVID:] *When I am ready to give up, he knows what I should do.*

PSALMS 142:3A GNT

The implication of the second clause is that God not only knows but also guides in what one should do.

God also guides them in doing his work

The Holy Tent where God spoke to our ancestors was with them in the desert. *God told Moses how to make this Tent, and he made it like the plan God showed him.* ACTS 7:44 NCV™

[CORNELIUS, TO PETER:] *So now we are all here in the presence of God to listen to everything the Lord has commanded you to say to us.*

ACTS 10:33B

II. God's Plans for Israel

The OT prophets speak of a great, future renewal of Israel by God. Opinions differ as to whether these are literal and physical, as opposed to figurative or spiritual. If they are literal, then they speak of Israel and Jerusalem (or Zion), most likely immediately preceding and during the thousand years spoken of in Revelation 20:1–7. As such the time of a renewed Israel would largely correspond with that of a physical universal rule of Jesus Christ and would precede the final judgment. If instead the prophecies are basically figurative and spiritual, then they are more likely to be referring to all believers – the “new” Israel. As such they would be portraying God’s people and kingdom following Jesus Christ’s mission and/or quite possibly anticipating heaven or the new Jerusalem.

In reading the following, bear in mind that some prophecies are understood to be progressively fulfilled throughout history, culminating in a final fulfillment at the end of the age. For example a number of the passages refer initially to the Jew’s return after the Babylonian exile, but also appear to have a future era in view. Many probably also have an application to the experience of God’s people in all periods. As such they are a great source of encouragement to all believers.

Note that while the subheadings speak of Israel, many of the verses refer to Jerusalem in particular.

Return to the Land

God will return home the remnant of exiled Israel

[GOD:] *I'll gather the remnant of my flock from all the countries where I've driven them, and bring them back to their pasture where they'll be fruitful and increase in numbers.* JEREMIAH 23:3 ISV

Note that some commentators see a fulfillment of prophecies such as this one in the establishment of the modern state of Israel in 1948.

The people of Israel will possess the land forever

[GOD, TO JERUSALEM:] *All of your people will be godly; they will possess the land permanently.* ISAIAH 60:21A

Physical Renewal and Peace

Israel will be physically restored

They [people] will say, "This desolate land has become like the garden of Eden; the ruined, desolate, and destroyed cities are now fortified and inhabited." ³⁶Then the nations which remain around you will know that *I, the LORD, have rebuilt the ruins and replanted what was desolate. I, the LORD, have spoken – and I will do it!* [EZEKIEL 36:35–36](#)

Joy will accompany God's renewal of Israel

Certainly the LORD will console Zion; he will console all her ruins. *He will make her wilderness like Eden, her desert like the Garden of the Lord. Happiness and joy will be restored to her, thanksgiving and the sound of music.* [ISAIAH 51:3](#)

The Messiah will rule Israel forever in righteousness and peace

Of the increase of his government and of peace there will be no end, on the throne of David and over his kingdom, to establish it and to uphold it with justice and with righteousness from this time forth and forevermore. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this. [ISAIAH 9:7](#) ESV

Israel will have lasting peace

[GOD:] *Fairness will produce peace and result in lasting security.* ¹⁸*My people will live in peaceful settlements, in secure homes, and in safe, quiet places.* [ISAIAH 32:17–18](#)

Spiritual Renewal

God will cleanse Israel of sin

[GOD, THE PEOPLE OF ISRAEL:] This is what the sovereign LORD says: *In the day I cleanse you from all your sins ...* [EZEKIEL 36:33A](#)

The people of Israel will be given God's Spirit

I will no longer hide my face from them, when I pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel, declares the sovereign LORD. [EZEKIEL 39:29](#)

A Renewed Relationship with God

God will be Israel's God and they will be his people

[GOD:] *I will be their God and they will be my people.* For they will wholeheartedly return to me. [JEREMIAH 24:7B](#)

This denotes the consummate fulfillment of a key aspect of the first covenant which God made with Israel – that he would be their God and they would be his people.

God will dwell in Jerusalem, living among his people forever

The LORD says, 'I have returned to Zion and will live within Jerusalem. [ZECHARIAH 8:3A](#)

The name of the city from that day forward will be: 'The LORD Is There.' [EZEKIEL 48:35B](#)

The nations will come to Jerusalem to worship God

And so his name will be proclaimed in Zion, and *he will be praised in Jerusalem* ²²*when nations and kingdoms come together and worship the LORD.* [PSALMS 102:21–22](#) GNT

Glorification

God will glorify Israel

Jerusalem, the nations will see your goodness, and all kings will see your glory. [ISAIAH 62:2A](#) NCV™

Israel's renewal will in fact display God's glory

The desert and the dry land will be glad, and the wilderness will rejoice and blossom. ²Like a lily the land will blossom. It will rejoice and sing with joy. It will have the glory of Lebanon, the majesty of Carmel and Sharon. Everyone will see the glory of the LORD, the majesty of our God. [ISAIAH 35:1–2](#) GW

God's glory and majesty will be evident in Israel's wonderful and glorious restoration.

Section II.

What to Do

Part E.

Relating to God

21. Being Right with God

I. Getting Right with God

God's Invitation.....	188
Repentance.....	189
Belief in Jesus Christ.....	190
Reasons for Assurance	191

II. Staying Right with God

The Need to Obey God.....	192
The Need for Good Deeds.....	192
Living Free of the Law and Sin – by the Spirit.....	193
Epilogue: Living 'in' Jesus Christ.....	194

I. Getting Right with God

See also: *God's people are baptized in the "name" of Jesus Christ*, p. 254

The Bible does not simply repeat one basic formula as to how to get "right with God". However there are two prominent themes, which basically encompass the other things that the Bible mentions. These two fundamental themes are repentance and belief in Jesus Christ.

Bear in mind that in using the expression "right with God", this chapter largely has in view being deemed righteous in God's eyes, which involves the forgiveness of one's sins. As such, it also means that we are at peace with God.

God's Invitation

God invites all people to come to him and be saved

[GOD:] *Turn to me and be saved, all the ends of the earth!* For I am God, and there is no other. [ISAIAH 45:22](#) ESV

God wants us to earnestly seek him

[PAUL, PREACHING TO THE ATHENIANS:] God began by making one person, and from him came all the different people who live everywhere in the world. God decided exactly when and where they must live. ²⁷*God wanted them to look for him and perhaps search all around for him and find him*, though he is not far from any of us: ...

[ACTS 17:26–27](#) NCV™

We must believe in God and what he says

Now without faith it is impossible to please him, for the one who approaches God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him. [HEBREWS 11:6](#)

[JESUS:] I tell you the solemn truth, *the one who hears my message and believes the one who sent me* has eternal life and will not be condemned, but has crossed over from death to life. [JOHN 5:24](#)

Jesus' words were from God, who sent him. It is critical that we believe God's words.

We need to be open to believing and responding

He [Jesus] called a child, had him stand among them, ³and said [to his disciples], “I tell you the truth, *unless you turn around and become like little children, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven!* ⁴*Whoever then humbles himself like this little child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven.* [MATTHEW 18:2–4](#)

Here Jesus refers to the humility, openness and receptiveness of little children. These characteristics are required to believe and respond to Jesus’ message – and so enter God’s kingdom.

Repentance

The words in the Bible that are translated as “repent” speak of: changing one’s mind, regret and consequently turning around. When people are called to repent, they are called to change their mindset and turn away from sin to God.

We must repent

Therefore, although God has overlooked such times of ignorance, *he now commands all people everywhere to repent, ...* [ACTS 17:30](#)

Confess your sins . . .

But if *we confess our sins*, he is faithful and righteous, forgiving us our sins and cleansing us from all unrighteousness. [1 JOHN 1:9](#)

. . . Turn from sin and do what is right

Turn away from evil and do what is right! [PSALMS 34:14A](#)

Turn to God in repentance

[PAUL:] I testified to both Jews and Greeks about *repentance toward God* and faith toward our Lord Jesus. [ACTS 20:21 ISV](#)

Repentance is required for the forgiveness of sins

Therefore *repent and turn back so that your sins may be wiped out, ...* [ACTS 3:19](#)

Belief in Jesus Christ

Believe in Jesus Christ

Jesus replied, “This is the deed God requires – to *believe in the one whom he sent.*” JOHN 6:29

Believing in Jesus involves believing what the Bible says about: who he is; his teaching and deeds; and his death and resurrection – including their significance. Key matters concerning who he is and the significance of his death and resurrection are mentioned below. Regarding the latter, primarily we are to believe that as a result of his death and resurrection, Jesus provides forgiveness of sins (and consequently righteousness, leading to eternal life). As such we are to trust in him for the forgiveness of our own sins.

Believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God

[MARTHA, TO JESUS:] Martha said to him, “Yes, Lord, *I believe that you are the Messiah, the Son of God, the one who was expected to come into the world.*” JOHN 11:27B GW

“Christ” and “Messiah” are Greek and Hebrew terms respectively, meaning the “anointed” or the “Anointed One”. The OT tells of a coming anointed one of God, and on occasions speaks of him as God’s Son (cf. 2Sam 7:11b–14a; Ps 2:6–7; Ps 89:27).

Belief in Jesus Christ brings forgiveness of sins

About him [Jesus] all the prophets testify, that *everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name.* ACTS 10:43

As such, belief in Jesus Christ makes one righteous before God

But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, although the Law and the Prophets bear witness to it—²²*the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe.* ROMANS 3:21–22A ESV

Belief in Jesus Christ brings eternal life

For this is the way God loved the world: He gave his one and only Son, so that *everyone who believes in him will not perish but have eternal life.* JOHN 3:16

Reasons for Assurance

The verses in this section give reasons for assurance of things such as being saved and being in a close relationship with God – and consequently give assurance of being made right with God.

Having the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] For you did not receive the spirit of slavery leading again to fear, but *you received the Spirit of adoption, by whom we cry, “Abba, Father.”* ¹⁶*The Spirit himself bears witness to our spirit that we are God’s children.* ROMANS 8:15–16

Note that we can be confident that God has given the Holy Spirit to us through evidence such as: indications of the “fruits” of the Holy Spirit in our lives (cf. Galatians 5:22); having a spiritual gift from the Holy Spirit (some of which are more obvious than others); and recognition of the Holy Spirit’s help, such as his empowerment or guidance. Moreover, we can sense or have an inner awareness of God, which is constant evidence of the Holy Spirit’s presence.

Obedience to God

We can be sure that we know God if we obey his commands.

1 JOHN 2:3 NCV™

Love for other Christians

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] *We know that we have left death and come over into life; we know it because we love our brothers and sisters.*

1 JOHN 3:14 GNT

Further reasons

But if we confess our sins, he [God] is faithful and righteous, forgiving us our sins and cleansing us from all unrighteousness. 1 JOHN 1:9

[JESUS:] Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me, and *the one who comes to me I will never send away.* JOHN 6:37

Jesus assures us that he will not reject anyone who comes to him.

II. Staying Right with God

See also: *By faith we stand firm*, p. 198

As seen in the first half of this chapter, being made right with God involves being forgiven and granted righteousness. Having been made right with God, it is critical that we live in accordance with this standing, so as to stay right with God. The following topics deal with some key aspects involved in this, namely: obedience; good deeds; living by the Holy Spirit; and living “in” Jesus Christ.

The Need to Obey God

We need to obey God as well as believe

And by the command of the eternal God it [the gospel] is made known to all nations *that they might believe and obey*. [ROMANS 16:26B](#) NCV™

Obedience is critical for holiness and eternal life

[PAUL, SPEAKING TO BELIEVERS OF BEING SLAVES IN OBEDIENCE TO GOD:] Now you have been freed from sin and have *become God's slaves. This results in a holy life and, finally, in everlasting life*. [ROMANS 6:22](#) GW

After he [Christ] had finished his work, he became the source of *eternal salvation for everyone who obeys him*. [HEBREWS 5:9](#) GW

The Need for Good Deeds

True faith involves good deeds

Just as a person's body that does not have a spirit is dead, so faith that does nothing is dead! [JAMES 2:26](#) NCV™

Good deeds accompany salvation

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] Even though we speak like this, dear friends, *we are convinced of better things in your case, things that point to salvation*. ¹⁰For God is not so unjust as to forget your work and the love you have shown him as you have ministered to the saints and continue to minister to them. [HEBREWS 6:9–10](#) ISV

He [God] will reward each one according to his works: ⁷eternal life to those who by perseverance in good works seek glory and honor and immortality, ... ROMANS 2:6–7

But our deeds do not earn salvation, for it is by grace

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For by grace you are saved through faith, and this is not from yourselves, it is the gift of God; ⁹it is not from works, so that no one can boast.* EPHESIANS 2:8–9

Good deeds are an effect rather than a cause of salvation.

Living Free of the Law and Sin – by the Spirit

We have been freed from the law to live by the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *In the past, the law held us like prisoners, but our old selves died, and we were made free from the law. So now we serve God in a new way with the Spirit, and not in the old way with written rules.* ROMANS 7:6 NCV™

Through what Christ accomplished, God's people have been freed from the Mosaic Law as the means of being right with him. We are instead to live by his Spirit. Living by the Holy Spirit involves: being alert and responsive to the Spirit's guidance; and relying on the Spirit's power, to help and change us. Along with this, our minds should be focused on things of the Spirit (cf. Romans 8:5 below).

So instead of living by the sinful nature, live by the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *He [God] condemned sin in the flesh ⁴so that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who do not live according to the flesh but according to the Spirit. ⁵For those who live according to the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the Spirit set their minds on the things of the Spirit.* ROMANS 8:3B–5 ISV

Here the term "flesh" denotes our sinful nature.

Inner righteousness is needed, not just compliance with rules

[JESUS:] *"You have heard that it was said to an older generation, 'Do not murder,' and 'whoever murders will be subjected to judgment.'*

²²*But I say to you that anyone who is angry with a brother will be subjected to judgment. ...* ²⁷*“You have heard that it was said, ‘Do not commit adultery.’* ²⁸*But I say to you that whoever looks at a woman to desire her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.*
 MATTHEW 5:21–22A, 27–28

Epilogue: Living ‘in’ Jesus Christ

Paul often speaks of believers being or acting “in” Christ. This refers to their close relationship and association with Jesus Christ, in which they are even identified with him. (See also the introductory comment under *II. Being ‘in’ Jesus Christ*, p. 147).

Believers are to live their lives in accordance with this relationship. As such, in addition to being mindful of the relationship, believers should: be dependent on Jesus Christ in whom they subsist; and act in a way consistent with Jesus Christ and his teachings.

Live “in” Jesus Christ by faith

[PAUL, TO THE COLOSSIAN BELIEVERS:] For though I am absent from you in body, I am present with you in spirit, rejoicing to see your morale and *the firmness of your faith in Christ*. ⁶Therefore, just as you received Christ Jesus as Lord, *continue to live your lives in him, ⁷rooted and built up in him and firm in your faith* just as you were taught, and overflowing with thankfulness. COLOSSIANS 2:5–7

Paul appears to associate having a firm faith in Christ (vv. 5, 7) with living in Christ (v. 6) and being “rooted and built up in him” (v. 7).

Live “in” Jesus Christ by holding to his teachings

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *If you remain in me and my words remain in you, ask whatever you want, and it will be done for you. ...* ¹⁰*If you obey my commandments, you will remain in my love, just as I have obeyed my Father’s commandments and remain in his love.*
 JOHN 15:7, 10

One remains in Jesus Christ (v. 7) and similarly in his love (v. 10), by holding to his words (v. 7) and so his commands (v. 10).

22. Having Faith in God

I. Faith and Hope

What Faith Is	196
What to Have Faith For	196
The Importance of Faith	198
Hope in God.....	199

II. What Not to Do

Do Not Lack Faith.....	200
Do Not Be Afraid (I): Instructions.....	200
Do Not Be Afraid (II): Reasons.....	201
Do Not Worry	202
Do Not Trust in Other Things.....	202

I. Faith and Hope

Faith in God is absolutely fundamental to the Christian life. We need to continually live by faith, doing so in all areas of our lives. Hope is also vital for Christians. It is necessary for such things as sustaining and strengthening us – particularly in sustaining our faith.

What Faith Is

Faith involves believing in God

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] Through Christ *you believe in God*, who raised Christ from the dead and gave him glory. *So your faith and your hope are in God.* 1 PETER 1:21 NCV™

This links belief with faith (and hope). As such, it reflects that having faith in God involves believing in him. Such belief includes believing what he says.

We must also trust in God

Trust in him at all times, you people! PSALMS 62:8A

Trusting in God is an integral part of having faith in God. Having faith in God can be defined as believing and trusting God. For we are to believe in God and what he says, and also confidently trust in him and what he says in regard to our own lives. One could say having faith means that: in our minds we are to believe and in our hearts we are to trust.

What to Have Faith For

Have faith that God will fulfill what he promises

[PAUL, TO MEN SAILING ON A SHIP WITH HIM IN A BAD STORM:] For last night an angel of the God to whom I belong and whom I serve came to me ²⁴and said, ‘Do not be afraid, Paul! You must stand before Caesar, and God has graciously granted you the safety of all who are sailing with you.’ ²⁵Therefore keep up your courage, men, for *I have faith in God that it will be just as I have been told.* ACTS 27:23–25

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] *But in keeping with his [God's] promise, we are looking forward to new heavens and a new earth, where righteousness is at home.* 2 PETER 3:13 ISV

In “looking forward” to the fulfillment of God’s promises one demonstrates faith in them being fulfilled.

Note that God’s promises include promises regarding the afterlife (in view here), promises to take care of us (cf. Acts 27:23–25 ↑) and promises to answer prayer. The latter two are reflected in the next two subsections.

Have faith that God will care for you

All of you that honor the LORD and obey the words of his servant, *the path you walk may be dark indeed, but trust in the LORD, rely on your God.* ISAIAH 50:10 GNT

And what more should I say? For time would fail me to tell you about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and the prophets. ³³*Through faith they conquered kingdoms, administered justice, received promises, shut the mouths of lions, ³⁴put out raging fires, escaped death by the sword, found strength in weakness, became powerful in battle, and routed foreign armies.*

HEBREWS 11:32–34 ISV

Various people of God are shown here to have had faith that God would take care of them when facing powerful enemies and other very difficult circumstances.

Have faith that God will do what you ask

[DAVID:] *LORD, in the morning you will hear me; in the morning I will present my case to you and then wait expectantly for an answer.*

PSALMS 5:3

As Jesus went on from there, *two blind men followed him, shouting, “Have mercy on us, Son of David!”* ²⁸When he went into the house, the blind men came to him. *Jesus said to them, “Do you believe that I am able to do this?” They said to him, “Yes, Lord.”* ²⁹Then he touched their eyes saying, *“Let it be done for you according to your faith.”* ³⁰*And their eyes were opened.* MATTHEW 9:27–30A

The Importance of Faith

By faith we stand firm

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] I do not mean that we rule over your faith, but we are workers with you for your joy, because *by faith you stand firm*. [2 CORINTHIANS 1:24](#)

Faith produces obedience to God

By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out to a place he would later receive as an inheritance, and he went out without understanding where he was going. [HEBREWS 11:8](#)

Faith produces work in service to God

[PAUL, TO THE THESSALONIAN BELIEVERS:] We continually recall before God our Father *the things you have done because of your faith* and the work you have done because of your love. [1 THESSALONIANS 1:3A](#) NCV™

Faith is vital to prayer, for God to grant requests

If you believe, you will receive whatever you ask for in prayer. [MATTHEW 21:22](#) GNT

They [Israelite soldiers] cried out to God during the battle; *he responded to their prayers because they trusted in him.* [1 CHRONICLES 5:20B](#)

If we have faith nothing will be impossible

Then the disciples came to Jesus privately and said, “Why couldn’t we cast it [a demon] out?” ²⁰He told them, “It was because of your little faith. I tell you the truth, *if you have faith the size of a mustard seed, you will say to this mountain, ‘Move from here to there,’ and it will move; nothing will be impossible for you.*” [MATTHEW 17:19–20](#)

The “mountain” signifies a seemingly insurmountable difficulty, here presumably alluding to difficulties encountered in advancing God’s kingdom.

Jesus is emphasizing genuine or quality faith, rather than amount of faith. If we have such faith nothing will be impossible, both in our service of God and in confronting issues in our lives. As such we are to have faith (and pray) that what we understand to be in accordance with God’s will, will take place.

Hope in God

Hope for a believer involves an assurance of their future, based on the truth of God's promises – rather than merely being an unfounded optimism.

Set your hope on God's care

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF GOD:] He delivered us from such a deadly peril, and he will deliver us. *On him we have set our hope that he will deliver us again.* 2 CORINTHIANS 1:10 ESV

[PAUL, INSTRUCTING TIMOTHY WHAT TO TEACH BELIEVERS:] Command those who are rich in the things of this life not to be proud, but *to place their hope, not in such an uncertain thing as riches, but in God, who generously gives us everything for our enjoyment.* 1 TIMOTHY 6:17 GNT

Set your hope on Jesus Christ's return and what will follow

[PAUL:] At the same time we can expect *what we hope for – the appearance of the glory of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ.* TITUS 2:13 GW

Therefore, get your minds ready for action by being fully sober, and *set your hope completely on the grace that will be brought to you when Jesus Christ is revealed.* 1 PETER 1:13

Hope is vital for faith

[PAUL, TO THE COLOSSIAN BELIEVERS:] *Your faith and love have arisen from the hope laid up for you in heaven, which you have heard about in the message of truth, the gospel ...* COLOSSIANS 1:5

Now *faith is being sure of what we hope for, being convinced of what we do not see.* HEBREWS 11:1

The hope Christians have is not a groundless longing, but a confident assurance. Such hope stimulates and supports ongoing faith, which has as its focus that for which we hope.

II. What Not to Do

To live a life of faith, we need to avoid things which cause us to lack faith in God. These include doubt, fear, worry and trusting in other things. Some verses which encourage believers not to be afraid or worry are amongst the best-loved verses in the Bible.

Do Not Lack Faith

Do not be lacking in faith

Now a great windstorm developed and the waves were breaking into the boat, so that the boat was nearly swamped. ³⁸But he [Jesus] was in the stern, sleeping on a cushion. They woke him up and said to him, “Teacher, don’t you care that we are about to die?” ³⁹So he got up and rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, “Be quiet! Calm down!” Then the wind stopped, and it was dead calm. ⁴⁰And he said to them, “*Why are you cowardly? Do you still not have faith?*” [MARK 4:37–40](#)

Do not doubt

Immediately Jesus reached out his hand and caught him [Peter], saying to him, “*You of little faith, why did you doubt?*” [MATTHEW 14:31](#)
 [JAMES, SPEAKING OF ONE ASKING GOD FOR SOMETHING:] *But he must ask in faith without doubting, for the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea, blown and tossed around by the wind.* [JAMES 1:6](#)

The “wave” imagery depicts weak faith that wavers between belief of sorts (as shown in asking) and unbelief (as shown in doubting).

Do Not Be Afraid (I): Instructions

Do not be afraid – trust in God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *When I am afraid, I trust in you. ⁴In God – I boast in his promise – in God I trust, I am not afraid. What can mere men do to me?* [PSALMS 56:3–4](#)

Jesus said, “Don’t let your hearts be troubled. Trust in God, and trust in me. [JOHN 14:1](#) NCV™

Do not be afraid – be strong and courageous

[GOD, TO JOSHUA:] *“Be strong and courageous, because you’ll be leading this people to inherit the land that I promised to give their ancestors. ⁷Only be strong and very courageous to ensure that you obey all the instructions that my servant Moses gave you—turn neither to the right nor to the left from it—so that you may succeed wherever you go. ... ⁹“I’ve commanded you, haven’t I? Be strong and courageous. Don’t be fearful or discouraged, because the LORD your God is with you wherever you go.” ... ¹⁸... Only be strong and courageous.”* [JOSHUA 1:6–7, 9, 18B ISV](#)

Do Not Be Afraid (II): Reasons

God is far more powerful than our enemies

[KING HEZEKIAH, TO HIS ARMY:] *“Be strong and brave! Don’t be afraid and don’t panic because of the king of Assyria and this huge army that is with him! We have with us one who is stronger than those who are with him. ⁸He has with him mere human strength, but the LORD our God is with us to help us and fight our battles!”* The army was encouraged by the words of King Hezekiah of Judah. [2 CHRONICLES 32:7–8](#)

God is always with his people

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *Be strong and courageous! Do not fear or tremble before them, for the LORD your God is the one who is going with you. He will not fail you or abandon you!” ... ⁸The LORD is indeed going before you – he will be with you; he will not fail you or abandon you. Do not be afraid or discouraged!* [DEUTERONOMY 31:6, 8](#)

God helps his people

God is our strong refuge; *he is truly our helper in times of trouble. ²For this reason we do not fear when the earth shakes, and the mountains tumble into the depths of the sea, ³when its waves crash and foam, and the mountains shake before the surging sea.* [PSALMS 46:1–3](#)

So we can say with confidence, *“The Lord is my helper, and I will not be afraid. What can man do to me?”* [HEBREWS 13:6](#)

Do Not Worry

Do not worry – trust God with your concerns

Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in every situation, through prayer and petition with thanksgiving, tell your requests to God. ⁷And the peace of God that surpasses all understanding will guard your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus. [PHILIPPIANS 4:6–7](#)

Leave all your worries with him, because he cares for you. [1 PETER 5:7](#) GNT

Do not worry about the cares of this life, for God will provide

[JESUS:] So then, *don't worry saying, 'What will we eat?' or 'What will we drink?' or 'What will we wear?'* ³²For the unconverted pursue these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them. ³³*But above all pursue his kingdom and righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well.* ³⁴*So then, do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Today has enough trouble of its own.* [MATTHEW 6:31–34](#)

Do Not Trust in Other Things

Do not trust in other people, but rather trust in God

It is better to take shelter in the LORD than to trust in people. ⁹*It is better to take shelter in the LORD than to trust in princes.* [PSALMS 118:8–9](#)

Do not trust in yourself

The one who trusts in himself is stupid, but the one who lives wisely will be kept safe. [PROVERBS 28:26](#) ISV

Trust in the LORD with all your heart, and do not rely on your own understanding. [PROVERBS 3:5](#)

Do not trust in riches

The one who trusts in his riches will fall, but the righteous will flourish like a green leaf. [PROVERBS 11:28](#)

23. Loving, Fearing and Obeying God

I. Loving and Fearing God

Love God	204
The Importance of Loving God	205
Fear God	205
Why God Should Be Feared	206
The Importance of Fearing God	207

II. Obeying God

Obey God	208
How to Obey God	209
Follow Jesus Christ.....	210

I. Loving and Fearing God

Love and fear are two emotions or attitudes that we should have towards God, and arguably they stand alone as such. The Bible states that loving God is of the utmost importance. Fearing God is also shown to be critical. Like loving God, understanding and having the fear of God that the Bible teaches, benefits us in many ways.

Note that both love and fear of God are closely associated with obeying him (the theme of the second half of this chapter). They are very strong, compelling emotions and provide the primary emotional stimuli for obeying God (cf. Deuteronomy 10:12–13) – supplementing intellectual stimuli arising out of such things as faith. Moreover, the Bible indicates that our love and fear of God are actually expressed primarily in obeying him.

Love God

Love God and Jesus Christ

Love the LORD, all you faithful followers of his! PSALMS 31:23A

Grace be with all of those who *love our Lord Jesus Christ with an undying love.* EPHESIANS 6:24

Love for God and Jesus Christ is shown by obeying them

We show our love for God by obeying his commandments, and they are not hard to follow. 1 JOHN 5:3 CEV

Jesus replied, “If anyone loves me, he will obey my word, and my Father will love him, and we will come to him and take up residence with him. JOHN 14:23

Love for God is also linked with loving other Christians

Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ is God’s child, and *whoever loves the Father also loves the Father’s children.*

1 JOHN 5:1 NCV™

Everyone who loves God will naturally love his children as well.

The Importance of Loving God

Loving God is of the utmost importance

Jesus said to him, “*Love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.*”³⁸*This is the first and greatest commandment.* ³⁹The second is like it: ‘*Love your neighbor as yourself.*’⁴⁰*All the law and the prophets depend on these two commandments.*” [MATTHEW 22:37–40](#)

God and Jesus Christ love those who love them

[JESUS:] *The one who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and will reveal myself to him.* [JOHN 14:21B](#)

Note that the last clause refers to Jesus Christ revealing himself to those who love him, along with loving them.

Fear God

Fearing God is more than just having reverence for him. A sound appreciation of God’s holiness and wrath, along with his supreme power, produces a genuine fear of incurring his displeasure. But this does not involve anxiety or terror for those who seek to please him and who understand his grace.

Clearly, fearing God moves us to obey him. It also evokes and supplements such things as worship and service, and even trust. When we grasp the concepts involved and willingly do fear God, we learn to gladly do so, even treasuring verses that call us to fear God.

Fear God to the extent that you tremble before him

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *My flesh trembles out of fear of you, and I am in awe of your judgments.* [PSALMS 119:120A ISV](#)

Worship the LORD in holy attire! *Tremble before him, all the earth!*
[PSALMS 96:9](#)

Do not fear anything but God

[GOD, TO ISAIAH:] People are saying that others make plans against them, but you should not believe them. *Don’t be afraid of what they*

fear; do not dread those things. ¹³*But remember that the LORD All-Powerful is holy. He is the one you should fear; he is the one you should dread.* ISAIAH 8:12–13 NCV™

Note that if a person truly fears God, they are practically unable to fear anyone or anything else.

God's people should not live in fear of his punishment

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] God is love, and those who live in love live in union with God and God lives in union with them. ¹⁷*Love is made perfect in us in order that we may have courage on Judgment Day; and we will have it because our life in this world is the same as Christ's.* ¹⁸*There is no fear in love; perfect love drives out all fear. So then, love has not been made perfect in anyone who is afraid, because fear has to do with punishment.* 1 JOHN 4:16B–18 GNT

In v. 18 “love” appears to be referring to the love of God that is manifested in the Christian – the love that God has for them and they in turn show to others (v. 16), revealing themselves to be like God or Christ (v. 17b). Knowing and expressing such love drives out anxious fear of punishment from God (v. 18) – particularly as those who live in love live in God, and God in them (v. 16b). Knowledge of such love cannot coexist with anxious fear of God's punishment; they are incompatible, both logically and experientially. As such we can look towards Judgment Day with courage and confidence (v. 17).

Having a godly fear of God's punishment is a good thing, as it leads us to spurn sin and to not turn away from God. However, living with God's love – and under his grace – believers ought not live in anxious fear of God's punishment.

Why God Should Be Feared

God's surpassing greatness and sovereignty

There is none like you, O LORD; you are great, and your name is great in might. ⁷*Who would not fear you, O King of the nations? For this is your due; for among all the wise ones of the nations and in all their kingdoms there is none like you.* JEREMIAH 10:6–7 ESV

God's anger and judgment

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *But you, you are to be feared! Who can stand before you when once your anger is roused?* ⁸*From the heavens you uttered judgment; the earth feared and was still,* ⁹*when God arose to establish judgment, to save all the humble of the earth.* PSALMS 76:7–9 ESV

God's holiness

Who will not fear you, O Lord, and glorify your name, because you alone are holy? REVELATION 15:4A

God's holiness involves his separateness from and intolerance of that which is morally impure, with the latter leading to his judgment. Thus God's holiness – awesome in itself – and its grave implications give good reason to fear him.

The Importance of Fearing God

Fearing God is closely associated with obeying him . . .

[A WISE TEACHER:] *Fear God and keep his commandments,* because this is the whole duty of man. ECCLESIASTES 12:13B

. . . Fearing God compels one to avoid sin

Moses said to the people, “Don't be afraid, for God has come to test you, *so the fear of him may be present with you in order that you don't sin.*” EXODUS 20:20 ISV

Fear of God leads to life

Fearing the LORD leads to life, and one who does so will live satisfied; he will not be afflicted by calamity. PROVERBS 19:23

OT verses (such as this one) which speak of fearing God leading to “life”, generally have in view: life as opposed to premature death; and/or a fullness of life.

Fear of God is the beginning of wisdom

The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom; all those who practice it have a good understanding. His praise endures forever! PSALMS 111:10 ISV

II. Obeying God

The concept of obeying God permeates the whole Bible – the New Testament as well as the Old Testament. It is fundamental to a functional and healthy relationship with God. A related concept is that of following Jesus Christ, which likewise is relevant to all aspects of the Christian's life.

Note that the second half of 21. *Being Right with God – II. Staying Right with God* – begins with teaching underlining the need to obey God. This is obviously also very pertinent to this topic, *Obeying God*.

Obey God

Obey God always – forever

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *I am determined to obey your statutes at all times, to the very end.* PSALMS 119:112

We should obey God because of what he has done for us

[A PSALMIST, REFERRING TO GOD'S DEEDS FOR ISRAEL:] *When he led his people out, they rejoiced; his chosen ones shouted with joy. ⁴⁴He handed the territory of nations over to them, and they took possession of what other peoples had produced, ⁴⁵so that they might keep his commands and obey his laws.* Praise the LORD! PSALMS 105:43–45

We should obey God because of all that he has done for us and moreover because our obedience is in fact one of the chief objectives of all his deeds for us (v. 45a). A corollary of this is that if we do not obey we will forfeit God's blessings which are a key part of all the things he does for us.

We should obey God because he is our God . . .

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *I am the LORD your God; follow my statutes, observe my regulations, and carry them out.* EZEKIEL 20:19

. . . It is no good expressing commitment without obeying

[JESUS, TO THOSE WHO MERELY PROFESSED HIM AS THEIR LORD:] *Why do you call me 'Lord, Lord,' and don't do what I tell you?* LUKE 6:46

How to Obey God

Persistently read God's commands

It [a copy of God's law] must be with him constantly and he must read it as long as he lives, so that he may learn to revere the LORD his God and observe all the words of this law and these statutes and carry them out. [DEUTERONOMY 17:19](#)

This instruction is given for the king, but is relevant to all people.

Do what you learn of God's law and word

For Ezra had set his heart to study the Law of the LORD, and to do it and to teach his statutes and rules in Israel. [EZRA 7:10](#) ESV

[JESUS:] *Everyone who hears these words of mine and does them is like a wise man who built his house on rock.* [MATTHEW 7:24](#)

Ask God to help you follow his commands

Teach me, O LORD, the lifestyle prescribed by your statutes, so that I might observe it continually. ³⁴*Give me understanding so that I might observe your law, and keep it with all my heart.* ³⁵*Guide me in the path of your commands, for I delight to walk in it.* ³⁶*Give me a desire for your rules, rather than for wealth gained unjustly.* [PSALMS 119:33–36](#)

Submit yourself to God

So submit to God. [JAMES 4:7A](#)

To persistently obey God, we need to first submit to him.

Obey God wholeheartedly

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *Arrogant people smear my reputation with lies, but I observe your precepts with all my heart.* [PSALMS 119:69](#)

Note: God's and Jesus Christ's commands are not too difficult

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *This commandment I am giving you today is not too difficult for you, nor is it too remote.* [DEUTERONOMY 30:11](#)

[JESUS:] *Come to me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.* ²⁹*Take my yoke on you and learn from me, because I*

am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. ³⁰For *my yoke is easy to bear, and my load is not hard to carry.*

MATTHEW 11:28–30

The term “yoke” probably alludes to that which lay across the necks of oxen. In saying that the “yoke” and “load” of following him is “easy” and “not hard to carry” (v. 30), Jesus may be referring to the fact that as he is “gentle and humble in heart” (v. 29) he will not require anything that is beyond us.

Follow Jesus Christ

Follow Jesus Christ

[JESUS, TO PETER AND ANDREW:] *“Follow me, and I will turn you into fishers of people.”* ²⁰*They left their nets immediately and followed him.* MATTHEW 4:19B–20

To follow Jesus Christ involves not just simply following his commands, but also following him and his example. In doing so, we follow Christ not only as our leader, but also in companionship with him. This concept is an important aspect of discipleship.

Be a disciple of Jesus Christ

Then Jesus said to those Judeans who had believed him, *“If you continue to follow my teaching, you are really my disciples ...* JOHN 8:31

A disciple is one who seeks to learn and follow the teachings of another, even to the extent of becoming like the teacher (as reflected in the following subsection).

Follow Jesus Christ’s example

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *For I have given you an example – you should do just as I have done for you.* JOHN 13:15

Moreover, make Jesus Christ your Lord

But *set Christ apart as Lord in your hearts* and always be ready to give an answer to anyone who asks about the hope you possess.

1 PETER 3:15

24. Connecting with God

I. Being Close to God

Seek God	212
Focus on God.....	213
Meet with God and Live before Him.....	213
Know God.....	214

II. Praying to God

The Power of Prayer	215
Praying before God	216
Making Requests.....	217
God's Response to Requests	218

I. Being Close to God

Being or growing close to God involves consciously seeking God and focusing on him. Additionally, we can actually meet with God and also should live throughout each day in awareness of his presence. In growing close to God, we come to know him – the importance of which is emphatically stated by the Bible.

Seek God

“Seeking” typically entails intense effort, which is very much applicable to seeking God and fellowship with him. Seeking God also requires prayer, worship and obedience – along with persistently focusing on God, as per the following section, *Focus on God*.

Seek God wholeheartedly

Now *seek the LORD your God wholeheartedly and with your entire being!* [1 CHRONICLES 22:19A](#)

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *With all my heart I seek you. Do not allow me to stray from your commands!* [PSALMS 119:10](#)

If you seek God wholeheartedly, you will find him

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *But if you seek the LORD your God from there [in exile], you will find him, if, indeed, you seek him with all your heart and soul.* [DEUTERONOMY 4:29](#)

Seeking God should be accompanied by obedience to him

He [Asa] ordered Judah to seek the LORD God of their ancestors and to observe his law and commands. [2 CHRONICLES 14:4](#)

Seeking God brings great blessings

Even young lions sometimes lack food and are hungry, but *those who seek the LORD lack no good thing.* [PSALMS 34:10](#)

The LORD is good to those who trust in him, to the one who seeks him. [LAMENTATIONS 3:25](#)

Focus on God

Keep thinking about God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *I remember you while I'm lying in bed; I think about you through the night.* PSALMS 63:6 NCV™

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *For I am ever aware of your faithfulness, and your loyalty continually motivates me.* PSALMS 26:3

Keep thinking about what God has done

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *I recall the old days; I meditate on all you have done; I reflect on your accomplishments.* PSALMS 143:5

Meet with God and Live before Him

Come before God, meeting with him

[MOSES, TO LEADERS OF ISRAEL:] ... when *all Israel comes to appear before the LORD your God* in the place he chooses, you must read this law before them within their hearing. DEUTERONOMY 31:11

Like the Israelites came before God, believers can both corporately and individually come before God, in awareness of his presence, to meet with him. Individual Christians typically do this daily – reading the Bible, praying and even meditating.

Live before God . . .

Paul said, “Brothers, *I have lived my life before God in all good conscience up to this day.*” ACTS 23:1B ESV

We are to constantly live before God in the sense of living in awareness of his presence, companionship, help and discernment of our lives. As such we should think, speak and act accordingly.

. . . “Walk” with God

He [Noah] walked with God. GENESIS 6:9

To “walk” with God involves living before him. It suggests a personal and interactive relationship, inclusive of such things as prayer and trust in God.

Know God

Know God and Jesus Christ

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] I write to you, children, because *you know the Father*. I write to you, parents, because *you know the One who existed from the beginning* [Christ]. 1 JOHN 2:14A NCV™

[GOD:] If people want to boast, they should boast about this: They should boast that they *understand and know me*. They should boast that they *know and understand that I, the LORD, act out of faithfulness, fairness, and justice in the earth* and that I desire people to do these things,” says the LORD. JEREMIAH 9:24

We are to understand and know God – which includes appreciating that he acts in “faithfulness, fairness, and justice”.

Knowing God is linked to obeying his commands

Now *by this we know that we have come to know God: if we keep his commandments*. ⁴*The one who says “I have come to know God” and yet does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in such a person.* 1 JOHN 2:3–4

Knowing God is linked with loving and caring for others

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] Dear friends, *let us love one another, because love is from God, and everyone who loves has been fathered by God and knows God*. ⁸*The person who does not love does not know God, because God is love.* 1 JOHN 4:7–8

He [King Josiah] *upheld the cause of the poor and needy*. So things went well for Judah.’ *The LORD says, “That is a good example of what it means to know me.”* JEREMIAH 22:16

Knowing God is manifested in caring for the poor and needy, amongst other things. Note that like 1 John 4:7–8 above, this verse may be implying that one who knows God reflects his character and deeds.

Knowing God is vital for understanding

Wisdom begins with respect for the LORD, and *understanding begins with knowing the Holy One*. PROVERBS 9:10 NCV™

II. Praying to God

See also: *II. Praying in Hard Times*, p. 342

Prayer is one of the greatest privileges and one of the greatest responsibilities of being a Christian. It is also one of the main sources of vitality for our lives as Christians, and is critical to our effectiveness in our endeavors for God's kingdom. At the end of our lives, quite possibly many of us will see prayer as the main thing that we should have done more often. As the saying goes: "Life is short; pray hard."

The Power of Prayer

Prayer is very powerful

*The prayer of a righteous person has great effectiveness.*¹⁷ *Elijah was a human being like us, and he prayed earnestly that it would not rain and there was no rain on the land for three years and six months!*¹⁸ *Then he prayed again, and the sky gave rain and the land sprouted with a harvest.* JAMES 5:16B–18

If we ask God for things, he will give them (or do them)

[JESUS:] *Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened for you.*⁸ *For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks, the door will be opened.* MATTHEW 7:7–8

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *Again, I tell you the truth, if two of you on earth agree about whatever you ask, my Father in heaven will do it for you.*²⁰ *For where two or three are assembled in my name, I am there among them.* MATTHEW 18:19–20

The tremendous promises of answered prayer in this subsection are obviously not an automatic guarantee that every request will be granted. Amongst other things, such prayer must be consistent with God and Jesus Christ's purpose and will – which Jesus may have in view here with his reference to those asking being "assembled in my name" (v.20). Nevertheless, such wonderful promises should greatly encourage us to pray fervently and persistently.

Praying before God

Pray before God, in his presence

[SOLOMON, TO GOD:] Yet have regard to the prayer of your servant and to his plea, O LORD my God, listening to the cry and to *the prayer that your servant prays before you* this day, ... 1 KINGS 8:28 ESV

[NEHEMIAH:] I fasted and *prayed in the presence of the God of Heaven*. NEHEMIAH 1:4B ISV

To pray “before” God (cf. 1Ki 8:28 ↑) effectively means to pray in his presence (cf. Neh 1:4b ↑), being mindful of his presence.

Pray to God as a caring father

Therefore, *this is how you should pray*: ‘Our Father in heaven, may your name be kept holy. MATTHEW 6:9 ISV

Is there anyone among you who, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? ¹⁰Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? ¹¹If you then, although you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, *how much more will your Father in heaven give good gifts to those who ask him!* MATTHEW 7:9–11

Having a holy and loving Father in heaven should inspire us to make requests of him, doing so in awareness of him being such a Father. Note that the term “evil” (v. 11) is used here in a relative sense, in comparison to God and his standards, rather than in a general sense.

Pray in the Holy Spirit

But dear friends, use your most holy faith to build yourselves up, *praying in the Holy Spirit*. JUDE 1:20 NCV™

Having the Holy Spirit, believers are to pray “in the Holy Spirit”. As such we are to consciously rely on the Holy Spirit’s help, to empower and guide us in our prayers.

Be reverent when praying

[PAUL:] *I kneel in prayer to the Father*. EPHESIANS 3:14 CEV

Kneeling in prayer – “fall to my knees and pray” (NLT) – is indicative of reverence for God, and submission to him.

Making Requests

Ask for things in Jesus Christ's "name"

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] On that day, you will not ask me for anything. Truly, I tell all of you with certainty, *whatever you ask the Father for in my name, he will give it to you.* ... ²⁶*On that day, you will ask in my name.* JOHN 16:23, 26A ISV

In Jewish thought, a person's name represented or embodied their whole person – including their nature, authority and purpose/s. As such, to ask in Jesus Christ's "name" is to do so in accordance with all that his name signifies. It is prayer that is compatible with Jesus Christ himself and his purposes – and made on his authority.

When praying, people often use the phrase "in Jesus Christ's name" (or "in Jesus' name") to signify that they are asking for something in Jesus Christ's "name". The usage of the phrase does not by itself mean that the prayer is necessarily in accordance with Jesus Christ's "name". Along with being conscious of and acknowledging Jesus Christ's authority and role in our making of requests to God, the content of the prayer is also at issue. Thus asking for things in Jesus Christ's "name" concerns both how we ask and what we ask.

Bear in mind that the deeper one's relationship with Jesus Christ becomes, the better-equipped one becomes to make requests of God in Jesus Christ's "name".

Note that in the above verses, "On that day" (vv. 23, 26a) refers to the time following Jesus' ascension and the descent of the Holy Spirit at Pentecost –inclusive of the present age.

Ask earnestly and persistently

I cried out with all my heart, "Answer me, O LORD!" PSALMS 119:145A

Jesus told his disciples a story about how they should keep on praying and never give up: ... LUKE 18:1 CEV

Do not doubt but believe that what you ask will be granted

Now early in the morning, as he [Jesus] returned to the city, he was hungry. ¹⁹After noticing a fig tree by the road he went to it, but found nothing on it except leaves. He said to it, "Never again will

there be fruit from you!” And the fig tree withered at once. ²⁰When the disciples saw it they were amazed, saying, “How did the fig tree wither so quickly?” ²¹Jesus answered them, “I tell you the truth, *if you have faith and do not doubt, not only will you do what was done to the fig tree, but even if you say to this mountain, ‘Be lifted up and thrown into the sea,’ it will happen.* ²²*And whatever you ask in prayer, if you believe, you will receive.*” MATTHEW 21:18–22

Belief is vital in petitioning God, particularly in regard to things that seem impossible, as Jesus figuratively points out (v. 21). But belief is not merely making yourself “believe” what you do not really believe. Instead, it involves an understanding of God’s will and genuinely trusting in God to fulfill his will (cf. ZBC).

Give thanks when asking

Do not be anxious about anything. Instead, in every situation, *through prayer and petition with thanksgiving, tell your requests to God.* PHILIPPIANS 4:6

God’s Response to Requests

God answers those who obey and please him

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] Dear friends, *if our conscience does not condemn us, we have confidence in the presence of God,* ²²*and whatever we ask we receive from him, because we keep his commandments and do the things that are pleasing to him.* 1 JOHN 3:21–22

The clause “if our conscience does not condemn us” (v. 21) refers to having a clear conscience before God, from obeying and pleasing him (v. 22b).

God grants anything we ask that is in accordance with his will

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] And this is the confidence that we have before him: that *whenever we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.* ¹⁵*And if we know that he hears us in regard to whatever we ask, then we know that we have the requests that we have asked from him.* 1 JOHN 5:14–15

25. Exalting God

I. Instructions

Glorify and Honor God.....	220
Do Not Dishonor God	221
Praise and Thank God.....	221
How to Give Praise and Thanks (I): General.....	222
How to Give Praise and Thanks (II): Rejoicing.....	222

II. Reasons to Exalt God

Aspects of God's Being	223
Aspects of God's Character	223
What God Does in the World	224
What God Does for His People	225

I. Instructions

We exalt God by doing such things as glorifying, honoring, praising and thanking him. Exalting God is a very common theme in the Bible and should also be a prominent part of our lives. In fact the Bible tells us to praise and thank God constantly. The significance of exalting God is underlined by the first answer of the Westminster Shorter Catechism which says: "Man's chief end is to glorify God, and to enjoy him forever."

Glorify and Honor God

Give glorify to God . . .

[PAUL, TO THE ROMAN CHURCH:] Then you will all be joined together, and you will *give glory to God the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ*.
ROMANS 15:6 NCV™

. . . and honor God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *I will honor your name continually!* PSALMS 86:12B

Glorify and honor God by praise and thanksgiving

[DANIEL:] Then *I gave praise to the Most High God; I gave honor and glory to him who lives forever*. God's rule is forever, and his kingdom continues for all time. DANIEL 4:34B NCV™

[DAVID:] I will praise God in a song and will *honor him by giving thanks*. PSALMS 69:30 NCV™

Glorify and honor God by how you live

So whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, *do everything for the glory of God*. 1 CORINTHIANS 10:31

Whoever mistreats the poor insults their Maker, but *whoever is kind to the needy honors God*. PROVERBS 14:31 NCV™

God's people are identified with him and so their lives are in a sense a reflection on God. Thus they should seek to do everything in a way that will bring glory and honor to God.

Do Not Dishonor God

Do not dishonor God by your actions

[AGUR:] But if I am poor, I might *steal and bring disgrace on my God*.

PROVERBS 30:9B GNT

By ungodly actions God's people can bring dishonor to God. This is particularly so when the actions are known to others, as it publicly reflects badly on God as the one to whom his people belong.

Do not blaspheme God

You must not blaspheme God ... EXODUS 22:28A

Blaspheming God is to speak – or act – in a way that detracts from the honor of God.

Do not treat God with contempt

The LORD said to Moses, "How long will these people treat me with contempt? How long will they refuse to trust me in spite of all the miraculous signs I have done among them? ... ²³None of those who treat me with contempt will see it!" NUMBERS 14:11, 23 GW

To treat God with contempt is demeaning and dishonoring to God. Note that v. 23 refers to not seeing the promised land.

Praise and Thank God

Praise God constantly

Through him [Jesus Christ] then *let us continually offer up a sacrifice of praise to God*, that is, the fruit of our lips, acknowledging his name. HEBREWS 13:15

[DAVID:] *I will praise the LORD at all times; my mouth will continually praise him.* PSALMS 34:1

Give thanks to God always

Rejoice always, ¹⁷pray without ceasing, ¹⁸*give thanks in all circumstances; for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus for you.*

1 THESSALONIANS 5:16–18 ESV

How to Give Praise and Thanks (I): General

In righteousness

Shout for joy in the LORD, O you righteous! Praise befits the upright.

PSALMS 33:1 ESV

For our praise and thanksgiving to be valid and acceptable to God, we must strive to live lives that are “righteous” and “upright”.

Wholeheartedly

[DAVID:] *I will thank the LORD with all my heart!* PSALMS 9:1A

Through prayer

In the same way that he [Daniel] had always done, *he knelt down in prayer three times a day, giving thanks to God.* DANIEL 6:10B CEV

Through singing

Sing praises to God. Sing praises. PSALMS 47:6A NCV™

How to Give Praise and Thanks (II): Rejoicing

To rejoice is to be glad or joyful. By focusing on God, his promises and the wonderful things he has done, we cannot help but be filled with joy – and so we rejoice. This is typically done in conjunction with praising and thanking God.

Rejoice when giving praise and thanks to God

Sing to God! Sing praises to his name! Exalt the one who rides on the clouds! For the LORD is his name! Rejoice before him! PSALMS 68:4

You godly ones, rejoice in the LORD! Give thanks to his holy name. PSALMS 97:12

Moreover, rejoice in God always

[ETHAN, SPEAKING TO GOD OF WORSHIPERS:] *They rejoice in your name all day long, and are vindicated by your justice.* PSALMS 89:16

[PAUL:] *Rejoice in the Lord always. Again I say, rejoice!* PHILIPPIANS 4:4

II. Reasons to Exalt God

Not only does the Bible tell us to persistently exalt God, it is bulging with good reasons for doing so. Generally speaking, these compelling reasons or things for which to exalt God, concern what God is like and what he does.

Aspects of God's Being

God's glory

"Praise the glory of the LORD in heaven above!" [EZEKIEL 3:12B](#) GNT

God's greatness

Praise him for his surpassing greatness! [PSALMS 150:2B](#)

God's power

Praise him for his mighty acts! [PSALMS 150:2A](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Now to him who by the power that is working within us is able to do far beyond all that we ask or think, ²¹to him be the glory in the church and in Christ Jesus to all generations, forever and ever. Amen.* [EPHESIANS 3:20–21](#)

God's wisdom and knowledge

Oh, the depth of the riches and wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments and how fathomless his ways! ³⁴For who has known the mind of the Lord, or who has been his counselor? ... ³⁶... To him be glory forever! Amen. [ROMANS 11:33–34, 36B](#)

Aspects of God's Character

God's holiness

Praise the LORD our God! Worship on his holy hill, for the LORD our God is holy! [PSALMS 99:9](#)

God's holiness – in which he is set apart from all others in his purity and righteousness – should evoke awe, praise and worship.

God's love and faithfulness

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *I will give you thanks before the nations, O Master! I will sing praises to you before foreigners!* ¹⁰*For your loyal love extends beyond the sky, and your faithfulness reaches the clouds.*

PSALMS 57:9–10

God's mercy

People who are not Jewish praise God for his mercy as well.

ROMANS 15:9A GW

This has in view what God has done for all people through Christ.

What God Does in the World

God's creative work

"You are worthy, our Lord and God, to receive glory and honor and power, since you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created!" REVELATION 4:11

God's provision of water and food

Offer to the LORD a song of thanks! Sing praises to our God to the accompaniment of a harp! ⁸*He covers the sky with clouds, provides the earth with rain, and causes grass to grow on the hillsides.* ⁹*He gives food to the animals, and to the young ravens when they chirp.*

PSALMS 147:7–9

God's reign

[JOHN, DESCRIBING A VISION:] Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a vast throng, like the roar of many waters and like loud crashes of thunder. They were shouting: *"Hallelujah! For the Lord our God, the All-Powerful, reigns!"* REVELATION 19:6

"Hallelujah" is a call to praise God, often used itself as an expression of praise to God.

God's word

[DAVID:] *In God, whose word I praise, in the LORD, whose word I praise,* ¹¹*in God I trust; I shall not be afraid.* PSALMS 56:10–11A ESV

What God Does for His People

God's salvation through Christ and the associated blessings, . . .

[ZECHARIAH, SPEAKING OF THE SALVATION THAT WOULD COME THROUGH JESUS:] *Praise the Lord, the God of Israel! He has come to save his people.* ⁶⁹*Our God has given us a mighty Savior from the family of David his servant.* LUKE 1:68–69 CEV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. In Christ, God has given us every spiritual blessing in the heavenly world.* EPHESIANS 1:3 NCV™

The phrase “in the heavenly world” may be indicating that the blessings are ones that we will experience in the afterlife. Alternatively, the phrase is possibly emphasizing the heavenly and eternal dimension of spiritual blessings that we have now.

. . . in which one should rejoice

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] You have not seen him, but you love him. You do not see him now but *you believe in him, and so you rejoice with an indescribable and glorious joy,* ⁹*because you are attaining the goal of your faith – the salvation of your souls.* 1 PETER 1:8–9

God's deliverance from difficulties, . . .

[DAVID:] *I will thank you, LORD, because you are good.* ⁷*You have saved me from all my troubles,* and I have seen my enemies defeated. PSALMS 54:6B–7 NCV™

. . . in which one should rejoice

At that time they [God's people at the end of the age] will say, “Look, here is our God! We waited for him and he delivered us. Here is the LORD! We waited for him. *Let's rejoice and celebrate his deliverance!*” ISAIAH 25:9

Part F.

Church Life

26. Being One Body

I. General

The Church as One Body	230
Be in Unison	231
Be in Fellowship	232
Love Each Other.....	233

II. Caring for the Body

Pray for Each Other (I): General	234
Pray for Each Other (II): What to Ask.....	234
Encourage Each Other.....	235
Help Each Other.....	236

I. General

The New Testament deals extensively with how we should relate to other Christians and with issues vital for the life of the church. Amongst the most prominent themes are the need for unity and love. Fellowship is another important concept that we need to grasp, with it being involved in a number of aspects of church life.

The Church as One Body

Church members form one body – the body of Christ

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN CHURCH:] *A person's body is only one thing, but it has many parts. Though there are many parts to a body, all those parts make only one body. Christ is like that also. ...* ²⁷*Together you are the body of Christ, and each one of you is a part of that body.*

1 CORINTHIANS 12:12, 27 NCV™

The term “the body of Christ” figuratively depicts the spiritual union of Jesus Christ with his people. Moreover, it points to the unity Christ’s people have together in their relationship with him. While the worldwide church is the whole “body of Christ”, each local church is a form of “the body of Christ”. And in each case the many members together make one body.

Being one body, church members meet together

[PAUL:] Also, greet for me *the church that meets at their house.*

ROMANS 16:5A NCV™

[THE WRITER, TO BELIEVERS:] *Let us not give up the habit of meeting together, as some are doing. Instead, let us encourage one another all the more, since you see that the Day of the Lord is coming nearer.* HEBREWS 10:25 GNT

Church members function together as one church body

The men who were sent by the church went through Phoenicia and Samaria, telling how the Gentiles had turned to God. This news made the Lord’s followers very happy. ⁴*When the men arrived in Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the church, including the apostles and the leaders.* ACTS 15:3–4A CEV

This passage includes segments which illustrate churches functioning as one body – i.e. as a unit or cohesive community. The concept represented by the term “church” involves believers meeting together and functioning as a community or one spiritual body. As such, they worship God together and cohesively further the cause of their head, Jesus Christ. Furthermore, they live in relationship with each other, in which they minister to each other.

Be in Unison

Be united as one

The group of those who believed were of one heart and mind, and no one said that any of his possessions was his own, but everything was held in common. ACTS 4:32

[PAUL, TO THE CHURCH IN CORINTH:] I urge you, brothers and sisters, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, *to agree together, to end your divisions, and to be united by the same mind and purpose.*

1 CORINTHIANS 1:10

In the last clause, Paul urges his readers to be united by having the same Christ-centered thinking and objective/s.

Be at peace with each other

[PAUL, TO THE CHURCH IN ROME:] Therefore, *let’s keep on pursuing those things that bring peace* and that lead to building one another up. ROMANS 14:19 ISV

Submit to one another

[PAUL, TO THE CHURCH IN EPHESUS:] *Submit yourselves to one another because of your reverence for Christ.* EPHESIANS 5:21 GNT

Avoid foolish arguments and quarreling

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *Stay away from foolish and stupid arguments, because you know they grow into quarrels.* ²⁴*And a servant of the Lord must not quarrel* but must be kind to everyone, a good teacher, and patient. 2 TIMOTHY 2:23–24 NCV™

Be in Fellowship

The concept of “fellowship” involves sharing and participating in a partnership concerning a mutual interest or purpose, which for believers is their common faith and life in Christ. This is shown in the Greek word translated as “fellowship” (“koinonia”) which emphasizes participation. Believers participate in Christ and church activities, and in each other’s lives.

Have fellowship together – and with the Father and Jesus Christ

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] What we have seen and heard we announce to you too, so *that you may have fellowship with us (and indeed our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ)*. [1 JOHN 1:3](#)

This shows that the fellowship believers have together is not only based on their mutual relationship in Jesus Christ, but is also a fellowship with God, Christ and the Holy Spirit.

Participate together in church activities

They [the disciples] gathered frequently to pray as a group, together with the women and with Mary the mother of Jesus and with his brothers. [ACTS 1:14](#) GNT

[PAUL, TO THE CHURCH IN CORINTH:] I urge you ¹⁶also to submit to people like this, and to *everyone who cooperates in the work and labors hard*. [1 CORINTHIANS 16:15B–16](#)

Church members should participate together in God’s work, cooperating with each other.

Share together in the sufferings that come because of Christ

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *So never be ashamed to tell others about our Lord or be ashamed of me, his prisoner. Instead, by God’s power, join me in suffering for the sake of the Good News.* [2 TIMOTHY 1:8](#) GW

Share in each other’s joy and troubles

Rejoice with those who rejoice, weep with those who weep. [ROMANS 12:15](#)

Fellow believers may well be primarily in view here.

Love Each Other

See also: [31. Love](#), p. 271

Love each other as Christ loved us, even laying down his life

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] My commandment is this – to *love one another just as I have loved you*. ¹³*No one has greater love than this – that one lays down his life for his friends.* JOHN 15:12–13

Jesus disciples were to love each other as he had loved them, a love which he would show to be unsurpassed by laying down his life for them.

Loving other Christians is indicative of being of Christ and God

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] “I give you a new commandment – to love one another. *Just as I have loved you, you also are to love one another.* ³⁵*Everyone will know by this that you are my disciples – if you have love for one another.*” JOHN 13:34–35

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] Beloved, *let us love one another, for love is from God, and whoever loves has been born of God and knows God. ...* ¹²*No one has ever seen God; if we love one another, God abides in us and his love is perfected in us. ...* ¹⁶*God is love, and whoever abides in love abides in God, and God abides in him.* 1 JOHN 4:7, 12, 16B ESV

Love is the essence of God’s nature – “God is love” (v. 16; cf. v. 8). Everyone who loves exhibits God’s nature, demonstrating that they have been “born of God” (v. 7b). In addition, loving one another shows that we know God (v. 7), and that we live in God and he lives in us (vv. 12, 16b).

Love is expressed with actions

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] *Suppose someone has enough to live and sees a brother or sister in need, but does not help. Then God’s love is not living in that person.* ¹⁸*My children, we should love people not only with words and talk, but by our actions and true caring.* 1 JOHN 3:17–18 NCV™

II. Caring for the Body

The care that church members ought to show each other should be one of the defining characteristics of every church, evidencing Christian love. This care should include both spiritual and practical care, with the former largely involving prayer and encouragement.

Pray for Each Other (I): General

Pray constantly for each other

Never stop praying, especially for others. Always pray by the power of the Spirit. Stay alert and keep praying for God's people.

EPHESIANS 6:18 CEV

Particularly pray for those facing persecution . . .

[PAUL:] Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, ¹⁹for I know that *this will turn out for my deliverance through your prayers* and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ. PHILIPPIANS 1:18B-19

Paul speaks of the Philippians' prayers for him while he was imprisoned because of his work for God's kingdom (cf. v. 17).

. . . and pray for those spreading the gospel

[PAUL:] Finally, our brothers and sisters, *pray for us, that the Lord's message may continue to spread rapidly and be received with honor, just as it was among you.* 2 THESSALONIANS 3:1 GNT

Pray for Each Other (II): What to Ask

Ask that other believers will live as God wants

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *We pray to God that you will not do anything wrong.* 2 CORINTHIANS 13:7A NCV™

Pray for their spiritual growth and perfection

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *And I pray this, that your love may abound even more and more in knowledge and every kind of insight* ¹⁹*so that you*

can decide what is best, and thus be sincere and blameless for the day of Christ, ¹¹filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ to the glory and praise of God. PHILIPPIANS 1:9–11

Ask God to help and take care of them

[SOLOMON, TO GOD:] *May you be attentive to your servant's and your people Israel's requests for help and may you respond to all their prayers to you.* 1 KINGS 8:52

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Protect those who love you; because of you they are truly happy.* PSALMS 5:11B GNT

Encourage Each Other

Encourage each other

Instead, let us encourage one another all the more, since you see that the Day of the Lord is coming nearer. HEBREWS 10:25B GNT

Encourage and strengthen each other by what you say

He [Hezekiah] encouraged them, saying, ⁷"Be strong and brave! Don't be afraid and don't panic because of the king of Assyria and this huge army that is with him! We have with us one who is stronger than those who are with him. ⁸He has with him mere human strength, but the LORD our God is with us to help us and fight our battles!" The army was encouraged by the words of King Hezekiah of Judah. 2 CHRONICLES 32:6B–8

When you talk, do not say harmful things, but say what people need—words that will help others become stronger. Then what you say will do good to those who listen to you. EPHESIANS 4:29 NCV™

Encourage others to remain true to the Lord

When he [Barnabas] arrived, he rejoiced to see what the grace of God had done, and with a hearty determination he continuously encouraged them all to remain faithful to the Lord. ACTS 11:23 ISV

Encourage and strengthen each other by what you do

[PAUL, TO THE BELIEVERS IN COLOSSE:] *I want you to know what a struggle I am going through for you, for God's people at Laodicea, and for all of those followers who have never met me.* ²*I do it to encourage them.* Then as their hearts are joined together in love, they will be wonderfully blessed with complete understanding. And they will truly know Christ. [COLOSSIANS 2:1–2 CEV](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] We are speaking in Christ before God, and *everything we do, dear friends, is to build you up.* [2 CORINTHIANS 12:19B](#)

Help Each Other

Be concerned for and compassionate towards each other

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF THE CHURCH BODY:] Instead, God has blended together the body, giving greater honor to the lesser member, ²⁵so that there may be no division in the body, but the members may *have mutual concern for one another.* [1 CORINTHIANS 12:24B–25](#)

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Therefore, as God's chosen ones, holy and loved, *clothe yourselves with compassion, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience.* [COLOSSIANS 3:12 ISV](#)

Consequently, help each other

Carry one another's burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ. [GALATIANS 6:2](#)

God is always fair. He will remember *how you helped his people in the past and how you are still helping them.* You belong to God, and he won't forget the love you have shown his people. [HEBREWS 6:10 CEV](#)

Share what you have with those in need

Share what you have with God's people who are in need. Be hospitable. [ROMANS 12:13 GW](#)

All who believed were together and *held everything in common,* ⁴⁵*and they began selling their property and possessions and distributing the proceeds to everyone, as anyone had need.* [ACTS 2:44–45](#)

27. Worshiping God

I. General

Worship God.....	238
Worshiping before God.....	239
Worshiping Together.....	240

II. Offerings

Reasons to Give to God.....	241
What to Give to God.....	242
How to Give to God.....	243
Righteousness and Making Offerings.....	243

I. General

See also: 25. *Exalting God*, p. 219; 28. *Serving God*, p. 245

Worshipping God is one of the most important and fundamental duties of believers. It involves honoring him by acknowledging his worthiness, including his divine characteristics and wondrous deeds. This is done through such things as praise and thanksgiving, offered with adoration and reverence.

It is also done through offering our resources and even ourselves to God. The former is born out in the second half of this chapter. The latter is done largely through serving God. As such the following chapter on serving God is also pertinent to worshipping him.

Worship God

Worship God alone

Again, the devil took him [Jesus] to a very high mountain, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their grandeur. ⁹And he said to him, “I will give you all these things if you throw yourself to the ground and worship me.” ¹⁰Then Jesus said to him, “Go away, Satan! For it is written: ‘You are to worship the Lord your God and serve only him.’” [MATTHEW 4:8–10](#)

They [Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego] were willing to die rather than serve or worship any god other than their own. [DANIEL 3:28B NCV™](#)

Worship God for his glory and sovereignty

Ascribe to the LORD, O families of the peoples, ascribe to the LORD glory and strength! ⁸Ascribe to the LORD the glory due his name; bring an offering, and come into his courts! ⁹Worship the LORD in the splendor of holiness; tremble before him, all the earth! ¹⁰Say among the nations, “The LORD reigns!” [PSALMS 96:7–10A ESV](#)

Worship God for his great deeds . . .

All the nations, whom you created, *will come and worship you, O LORD. They will honor your name.* ¹⁰*For you are great and do amazing things. You alone are God.* [PSALMS 86:9–10](#)

. . . Worship God for his creation of everything

He [an angel] declared in a loud voice: “Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of his judgment has arrived, and *worship the one who made heaven and earth, the sea and the springs of water!*”

REVELATION 14:7

Worship God because of his care of his people

They bowed down and worshiped the Lord because they knew that he had seen their suffering and was going to help them. EXODUS 4:31B CEV

Worshipping before God

Worship God in spirit

But a time is coming – and now is here – when the *true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth*, for the Father seeks such people to be his worshipers. ²⁴*God is spirit, and the people who worship him must worship in spirit and truth.* JOHN 4:23–24

To worship “in spirit” is primarily an inward activity, rather than being centered on the performing of rituals (which were prominent in OT worship). It involves one’s spirit – and thus one’s mind and will. To begin with, the heart and/or conscience of the worshiper must be right before God. Then one must be honest and open in approaching God (cf. John 4:23–24 ↑), and fully focused on God; obviously this needs to be done willingly. Not least, the worshiper must worship by the Holy Spirit (cf. Philippians 3:3). This involves being conscious of the Spirit, relying on the Spirit’s enablement to commune with God and being open to the Spirit’s promptings.

Worship God in reverence and awe

Therefore let us be grateful for receiving a kingdom that cannot be shaken, and thus *let us offer to God acceptable worship, with reverence and awe,* ²⁹*for our God is a consuming fire.* HEBREWS 12:28–29 ESV

The description of God as a “consuming fire” points to his power and preparedness to fiercely devour or destroy that which is opposed to him and incompatible with his holiness.

Worship God with praise

Then the man knelt down and *worshipped the LORD*. ²⁷*He said, “Praise the LORD, the God of my master Abraham, who has faithfully kept his promise to my master.* GENESIS 24:26–27A GNT

Worshipping Together

Join with fellow believers in worshipping God

Ezra blessed the LORD, the great God, and all the people replied “Amen! Amen!” as they lifted their hands. *Then they bowed down and worshipped the LORD with their faces to the ground.* NEHEMIAH 8:6

[A CALL TO FELLOW ISRAELITES:] *Come! Let’s bow down and worship! Let’s kneel before the LORD, our creator!* PSALMS 95:6

Offer praise and thanksgiving together

They [Israelites] praised the LORD and gave thanks as they took turns singing: “The LORD is good! His faithful love for Israel will last forever.” Everyone started shouting and praising the LORD because work on the foundation of the temple had begun. EZRA 3:11 CEV

Pray together

They [the apostles] gathered frequently to pray as a group, together with the women and with Mary the mother of Jesus and with his brothers. ACTS 1:14 GNT

Remember the persecuted

II. Offerings

Making offerings to God of money and/or goods is an integral part of worshipping God. Moreover, the Bible gives a number of good reasons to give offerings to God. It also gives guidelines on what to give and how to give to God. Additionally, the Bible emphasizes the need for our lives to please God in order for our offerings to be acceptable to him.

Reasons to Give to God

Offerings are an important part of worshipping God

They will worship with sacrifices and food offerings. They will make vows to the LORD and carry them out. [ISAIAH 19:21B](#) GW

Offerings acknowledge God's provision for us

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] You must count seven weeks; you must begin to count them *from the time you begin to harvest the standing grain.* ¹⁰*Then you are to celebrate the Festival of Weeks before the LORD your God with the voluntary offering that you will bring, in proportion to how he has blessed you.* [DEUTERONOMY 16:9-10](#)

The people were to bring an offering of an amount that was in proportion to the size of the harvest that God had blessed them with. Today believers likewise offer a portion of what they have earned from their work.

Offerings express thanksgiving to God for his deliverance

[DAVID:] O God, I have taken vows before you; therefore *I will offer thanksgiving sacrifices to you.* ¹³*For you have delivered me from death and my feet from stumbling, so that I may walk before God in the light of the living!* [PSALMS 56:12-13](#) ISV

Offerings support the service of God

The Israelites brought a freewill offering to the LORD, every man and woman whose heart was willing to bring materials for all the work that the LORD through Moses had commanded them to do. [EXODUS 35:29](#)

What to Give to God

Give the “firstfruits” to God

As soon as the command was spread abroad, the people of Israel *gave in abundance the firstfruits of grain, wine, oil, honey, and of all the produce of the field.* [2 CHRONICLES 31:5](#) ESV

The OT speaks of giving to God the first portion of what we produce, often referred to as the “firstfruits”. Today many believers emulate this by giving to God a portion of their wage on first receiving it. By this God’s provision and goodness is acknowledged in a way that honors him (cf. Proverbs 3:9) – putting him first, rather than simply offering him the leftovers that we can spare. Note also that offering the firstfruits to God was a statement, made in faith, that the rest of the harvest would take place – a principle also applicable today.

Give the best to God . . .

[A DIRECTIVE TO THE ISRAELITES:] *You must bring the best of the firstfruits of your land to the Holy Tent of the LORD your God.* [EXODUS 23:19A](#) NCV™

. . . Do not give what is inferior to God

[DIRECTIVES TO THE ISRAELITES:] *You shall not offer anything that has a blemish, for it will not be acceptable for you.* [LEVITICUS 22:201](#) ESV

Give all that you can

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF THE MACEDONIAN CHURCHES:] *They have been tested by great troubles, and they are very poor. But they gave much because of their great joy. ³I can tell you that they gave as much as they were able and even more than they could afford.* [2 CORINTHIANS 8:2–3A](#) NCV™

And a poor widow came and put in two small copper coins, worth less than a penny. ⁴³He called his disciples and said to them, “I tell you the truth, this poor widow has put more into the offering box than all the others. ⁴⁴For they all gave out of their wealth. But *she, out of her poverty, put in what she had to live on, everything she had.*” [MARK 12:42–44](#)

How to Give to God

Give willingly

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Each one of you should give just as he has decided in his heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, because God loves a cheerful giver.* 2 CORINTHIANS 9:7

Give generously

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] Therefore I thought it necessary to urge these brothers to go to you in advance and to arrange ahead of time *the generous contribution* you had promised, so this may be ready as a *generous gift and not as something you feel forced to do*.⁶ My point is this: *The person who sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and the person who sows generously will also reap generously.* 2 CORINTHIANS 9:5–6

Give regularly

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *On the first day of the week, each of you should set aside some income and save it to the extent that God has blessed you, so that a collection will not have to be made when I come.* 1 CORINTHIANS 16:2

This verse is quite probably speaking of money being brought to Christian gatherings held on the first day of every week.

Righteousness and Making Offerings

We must live righteously to acceptably worship God

[GOD:] *You, Israel, turn justice into poison and throw righteousness on the ground. ...*²¹ *I hate your festivals; I despise them. I'm not pleased with your religious assemblies. ...*²³ *Spare me the sound of your songs. I won't listen to the music of your harps.* AMOS 5:7, 21, 23 GW

*Then they'll bring an offering in righteousness to the LORD.*⁴ *Then the offering to the LORD by Judah and Jerusalem will be acceptable as it was in the past, even as in former years.* MALACHI 3:3B–4 ISV

For any form of worship to be acceptable to God, including making offerings, we must live righteously, doing what is right.

Our offerings are not acceptable if our lives do not please God

[GOD, SPEAKING OF HIS UNFAITHFUL PEOPLE:] For *they have paid no attention to what I have said, and they have rejected my law.* ²⁰*I take no delight when they offer up to me frankincense that comes from Sheba or sweet-smelling cane imported from a faraway land. I cannot accept the burnt offerings they bring me.* JEREMIAH 6:19B–20A

We should in fact offer ourselves to God, in service to him

[PAUL:] I appeal to you: *offer yourselves as a living sacrifice to God, dedicated to his service and pleasing to him.* ROMANS 12:1B GNT

Also offer other spiritual sacrifices to God

So *offer spiritual sacrifices that God accepts* through Jesus Christ.
1 PETER 2:5B GW

Through him then *let us continually offer up a sacrifice of praise to God, that is, the fruit of our lips, acknowledging his name.*
HEBREWS 13:15

Remember the persecuted

28. Serving God

I. Preliminary Instructions and Insights

Be Prepared to Serve God.....	246
Be Devoted to God’s Work.....	246
Reasons to Serve God	247
Being Guided by God	248

II. Doing God’s Work

Do God’s Work – the Best You Can.....	249
Do the Work through God	249
The Manner in Which to Serve God.....	251
Working with Other Believers.....	251
Spiritual Gifts.....	252

I. Preliminary Instructions and Insights

All of God's people are his servants – and so need to be prepared to serve him. This requires devotion to God, and to his work. As well as instructing us to serve God, the Bible provides plenty of encouragement to persevere in doing so. The Bible also gives insights into being guided by God, something which is very much applicable to serving God as well as to other areas of our lives.

Be Prepared to Serve God

Be prepared and ready to do God's work

So *prepare your minds for service* and have self-control. [1 PETER 1:13A](#) NCV™
 [GOD:] But you, Jeremiah, *get yourself ready!* Go and tell these people everything I instruct you to say. [JEREMIAH 1:17A](#)

Being prepared for God's work requires godly living

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF CHURCH LEADERS:] For *the overseer must be blameless as one entrusted with God's work, not arrogant, not prone to anger, not a drunkard, not violent, not greedy for gain.*⁸ *Instead he must be hospitable, devoted to what is good, sensible, upright, devout, and self-controlled.* [TITUS 1:7–8](#)

Be Devoted to God's Work

Serve only God

Samuel said to all the people of Israel, "If you are really turning to the LORD with all your hearts, remove from among you the foreign gods and the images of Ashtoreth. *Give your hearts to the LORD and serve only him.* Then he will deliver you from the hand of the Philistines." ⁴So the Israelites removed the Baals and images of Ashtoreth. *They served only the LORD.* [1 SAMUEL 7:3–4](#)

Devote yourself to God's work

Always give yourselves fully to the work of the Lord, because you know that your work in the Lord is never wasted. [1 CORINTHIANS 15:58B](#) NCV™

Dedicate your life to living for God and Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] So then, my brothers and sisters, because of God's great mercy to us I appeal to you: *offer yourselves as a living sacrifice to God, dedicated to his service and pleasing to him.* ROMANS 12:1 GNT

Then he [Jesus] said to them all, "If anyone wants to become my follower, *he must deny himself, take up his cross daily, and follow me.* LUKE 9:23

We must deny ourselves – give up living for ourselves and what we want – and live for Christ instead, daily shouldering the accompanying difficulties.

Reasons to Serve God

God is our God, who has done great things for us

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] Revere *the LORD your God, serve him, be loyal to him and take oaths only in his name.* ²¹He is the one you should praise; *he is your God, the one who has done these great and awesome things for you that you have seen.* DEUTERONOMY 10:20–21

Your work for God will be productive

[JESUS, EXPLAINING A PARABLE:] But the ones on the good soil are the people who hear the word but also hold on to it with good and honest hearts, *producing a crop through endurance.* LUKE 8:15 ISV

As with "fruit" elsewhere in this chapter, "crop" may well be referring to – or at least may be applied to – the productivity of one's work for the kingdom (the theme of this subsection). Alternatively the spiritual growth of the individual believer may be in view.

You will be rewarded for your work

But as for you, be strong and don't get discouraged, for *your work will be rewarded.* 2 CHRONICLES 15:7

Whoever does not produce "fruit" will be cut off from Christ

[JESUS, SPEAKING OF GOD:] *He cuts off every branch of mine that does not produce fruit.* JOHN 15:2A NCV™

Being Guided by God

The topic of being guided by God is very pertinent to serving God – such as in ascertaining his will in regard to how we should serve him. It is also of course important in other aspects of our lives. For it is vital in living righteously generally and in navigating through troubled times, as reflected in some of the following verses. God’s guidance also becomes an issue when we need to make a significant choice or decision.

God’s guidance may come through such sources as: the Holy Spirit’s promptings; inner conviction or assurance (itself largely of the Holy Spirit); Scripture; circumstances; or advice from others. But God does not always guide his people by making them aware of his will. They may not even be aware of being guided by God, only recognizing his guidance in retrospect. The Bible actually says little about how one should find out God’s guidance. But it does speak of how living a godly life and prayer are critical for being open to it – as is indicated in the following subsections.

To be guided by God, live a godly life

[DIRECTIVES TO ISRAEL:] *You must remove the burdensome yoke from among you and stop pointing fingers and speaking sinfully.* ¹⁰*You must actively help the hungry and feed the oppressed. Then your light will dispel the darkness, and your darkness will be transformed into noonday.* ¹¹*The LORD will continually lead you; he will feed you even in parched regions.* [ISAIAH 58:9B–11A](#)

Pray, asking God to guide you

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *For you are my rock and my fortress; for the sake of your name guide me and lead me.* [PSALMS 31:3 ISV](#)

Remember the persecuted

II. Doing God's Work

In instructing us in how to do God's work, serving him, the Bible urges us to do our best but emphasizes God's role and the need to rely on him. The Bible also teaches us about: the manner in which we should serve God; serving God in a church context; and God's extraordinary spiritual gifts to his people for serving him.

Do God's Work – the Best You Can

Do the work assigned to you

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] God has made us what we are, and in our union with Christ Jesus *he has created us for a life of good deeds, which he has already prepared for us to do.* [EPHESIANS 2:10](#) GNT

Paul appears to be speaking of God preparing particular work for each believer to do (cf. AMP). As such, believers need to look to God to guide them and enable them to do the work – and willingly do it.

Work hard at God's work

[PAUL, TO THE ROMAN BELIEVERS:] Greet Tryphaena and Tryphosa, who have *worked hard for the Lord.* Greet dear Persis, who has *worked very hard for the Lord.* [ROMANS 16:12](#) GW

Do quality work which bears "fruit" – "fruit" that will last

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] You did not choose me. *I chose you and sent you out to produce fruit, the kind of fruit that will last.* [JOHN 15:16A](#) CEV

Here "fruit" likely refers to spiritual outcomes of quality work for God.

Do the Work through God

Apart from God and Jesus Christ, we can accomplish nothing

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] Remain in me, and I will remain in you. *Just as the branch cannot bear fruit by itself, unless it remains in the vine, so neither can you unless you remain in me.* ⁵⁴*I am the vine; you are the branches. The one who remains in me – and I in him – bears*

much fruit, because apart from me you can accomplish nothing.

JOHN 15:4–5

[PAUL:] I planted the seeds, Apollos watered them, *but God made them sprout and grow.* ⁷*What matters isn't those who planted or watered, but God who made the plants grow.* 1 CORINTHIANS 3:6–7 CEV

God's servants cannot themselves produce any true and lasting spiritual results or growth from the work that they do – only God can.

So, pray to God for help in the work – and ask others to pray

[THE EARLY BELIEVERS, PRAYING:] Lord, listen to their threats! *We are your servants. So make us brave enough to speak your message.* ³⁰*Show your mighty power, as we heal people and work miracles and wonders in the name of your holy Servant Jesus.* ³¹*After they had prayed, the meeting place shook. They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and bravely spoke God's message.* ACTS 4:29–31 CEV

[PAUL, TO THE EPHESIAN BELIEVERS:] *Pray for me also, that I may be given the message when I begin to speak – that I may confidently make known the mystery of the gospel,* ²⁰*for which I am an ambassador in chains. Pray that I may be able to speak boldly as I ought to speak.* EPHESIANS 6:19–20

Do God's work with his help

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] *Whoever speaks, let it be with God's words. Whoever serves, do so with the strength that God supplies, so that in everything God will be glorified through Jesus Christ. To him belong the glory and the power forever and ever. Amen.* 1 PETER 4:11

The first statement is probably indicating that we should rely on God's help in what we say in ministering to others – as is paralleled in the second statement regarding serving with God's strength.

Serve God through the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But now we are released from the law, having died to that which held us captive, so that *we serve in the new way of the Spirit* and not in the old way of the written code. ROMANS 7:6 ESV

God's people serve and obey him now by following the directing of the Holy Spirit, with the Spirit's empowerment, rather than by focusing on "obeying the letter of the law" (NLT).

The Manner in Which to Serve God

Serve God in holiness and righteousness

[ZECHARIAH, THE PRIEST:] This oath [of God] grants ⁷⁴that we, being rescued from the hand of our enemies, may *serve him without fear, ⁷⁵in holiness and righteousness* before him for as long as we live.

LUKE 1:73B-75

Serve God wholeheartedly

[MOSES:] And now, Israel, what does the LORD your God require of you, but to fear the LORD your God, to walk in all his ways, to love him, to *serve the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, ...* DEUTERONOMY 10:12 ESV

Be strong and courageous

The LORD gave this command to Joshua, son of Nun: “*Be strong and courageous, because you will bring the Israelites into the land that I swore to give them, and I will be with you.*” DEUTERONOMY 31:23 GW

Working with Other Believers

Serve each other

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Serve each other with love.* GALATIANS 5:13 NCV™

Do God’s work together

[PAUL, TO SYZYGUS:] And, my true partner, *I ask you to help them. These women have worked together with me and with Clement and with the others in spreading the good news.* PHILIPPIANS 4:3A CEV

Encourage each other in doing God’s work

We must also consider how to encourage each other to show love and to do good things. HEBREWS 10:24 GW

He [King Josiah] appointed the priests to fulfill their duties and *encouraged them to carry out their service in the LORD’s temple.*

2 CHRONICLES 35:2

Spiritual Gifts

God equips people to serve him, notably by giving them spiritual gifts.

God gives each of his people a spiritual gift, through the Spirit

To each person the manifestation of the Spirit is given for the benefit of all. ⁸For one person is given through the Spirit the message of wisdom, and another the message of knowledge according to the same Spirit, ⁹to another faith by the same Spirit, and to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, ¹⁰to another performance of miracles, to another prophecy, and to another discernment of spirits, to another different kinds of tongues, and to another the interpretation of tongues. 1 CORINTHIANS 12:7–10

Broadly speaking, “the message of wisdom” and “the message of knowledge” (v. 8) quite possibly are respectively “the ability to give wise advice” (NLT) or insight and “the gift of special knowledge” (NLT) – with probably the application and conveying of spiritual truths being particularly in view.

The term “faith” (v. 9) does not refer to saving faith, but to exceptional faith or trust in God. The gift of “prophecy” (v. 10) is the communication of a revelation from God, such as a foretelling of a future event or a revelation of God’s will regarding a certain matter.

The gift of “discernment of spirits” (v. 10) appears to be the ability to distinguish whether something, such as a prophecy or teaching, is prompted by the Holy Spirit or a demonic spirit. The gift of “tongues” (v. 10) is the ability to speak in an unlearned language. (Note that further gifts are mentioned in the following subsection.)

Use your spiritual gift to build up the church

It was he [Christ] who gave some as apostles, some as prophets, some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers, ¹²to equip the saints for the work of ministry, that is, to build up the body of Christ, ¹³until we all attain to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God – a mature person, attaining to the measure of Christ’s full stature. EPHESIANS 4:11–13

As parts of the body of Christ, believers are to use the gifts they have been given (v. 11) in ministry (v. 12a) so that Christ’s body may be built up and become mature (vv. 12b–13).

29. Significant Practices

I. Symbolic Rites

Baptism	254
The Lord's Supper	255
Circumcision: Its Needlessness	256

II. Other Significant Practices

Confession of Jesus Christ	258
Keeping the Sabbath Holy	259
Fasting	260
The Laying on of Hands	260

I. Symbolic Rites

Baptism and the Lord's Supper are considered by many churches to be the Christian rites or sacraments. "Sacrament" comes from a Latin term meaning "military oath". The sacraments are often spoken of as being an outward sign with an inner significance. They are practiced by churches in worship ceremonies. Circumcision was also a rite practiced by God's people, under the first covenant, but has no such relevance under the second covenant.

Baptism

The Greek translated as "baptism" denotes washing in water. Opinions differ as to whether baptism need necessarily involve full immersion in water, as opposed to simply pouring or sprinkling water on the person being baptized.

God's people are baptized in the "name" of Jesus Christ

On hearing this, *they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus.*

ACTS 19:5 ESV

Being baptized in or into the "name" of Jesus Christ, is in part a declaration of our identification and relationship with Jesus Christ, and our commitment or allegiance to him. This explanation reflects both the meaning of the Latin from which "sacrament" comes – military oath (as commented above) – and the concept of being united with Christ (discussed in the following subsection).

Baptism into Jesus Christ signifies being united with him – with the corresponding implications

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] How can we who died as far as sin is concerned go on living in it? ³Or don't you know that *all of us who were baptized into union with the Messiah Jesus were baptized into his death? ⁴Therefore, through baptism we were buried with him into his death so that, just as the Messiah was raised from the dead by the Father's glory, we too may live an entirely new life. ⁵For if we have become united with him in a death like his, we will certainly also be united with him in a resurrection like his.* ROMANS 6:2B–5 ISV

After indicating that baptism signifies the spiritual union of the believer with Christ (v. 3), Paul draws parallels between baptism and other aspects of this spiritual union. Paul appears to parallel one's immersion in water at baptism, with being immersed in death with Christ in his death (vv. 3–4a, 5a). As such, baptism portrays the death of our old self which was enslaved to sin (cf. vv. 6–7), and so a death to sin (v. 2b). Subsequently baptism symbolizes one being raised up in union with Christ to live a new spiritual life (vv. 4b, 5b).

Baptism signifies belief

But when they believed Philip as he was proclaiming the good news about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they began to be baptized, both men and women. [ACTS 8:12](#)

Baptism is a declaration and confirmation of belief.

Baptism signifies the washing away of sins

[ANANIAS, TO SAUL:] And now what are you waiting for? Get up, *be baptized, and have your sins washed away*, calling on his name. [ACTS 22:16](#)

This should not be interpreted to mean that baptism in itself brings the forgiveness of sin. Rather, the external washing in water is symbolic of one's spiritual cleansing.

The Lord's Supper

The Lord's Supper is regularly practiced in churches. It primarily symbolizes and commemorates Jesus Christ's death for us. The breaking of the bread symbolizes the breaking of his body, and the pouring out of the wine symbolizes the pouring out of his blood.

Observe the Lord's Supper – in remembrance of Jesus Christ and his death

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you, that *the Lord Jesus on the night in which he was betrayed took bread, ²⁴and after he had given thanks he broke it and said, "This is my body, which is for you. Do this in*

remembrance of me.”²⁵ *In the same way, he also took the cup after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, every time you drink it, in remembrance of me.”* 1 CORINTHIANS 11:23–25

“This cup is the new covenant in my blood” (v. 25), speaks of Jesus Christ’s blood, shed in his death, introducing the new relationship – or covenant – between God and his people. In part at least this was achieved by his death bringing forgiveness for the sins of God’s people. The shedding of his blood inaugurated the new covenant and ratified or sealed it (cf. AMP, GNT, NCV, NLT) – just as the sprinkling of “the blood of the covenant” by Moses ceremonially confirmed the old covenant (cf. Exodus 24:5–8).

Participating in the Lord’s Supper also symbolizes participating in the blood and body of Jesus Christ

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] *The cup of blessing that we bless is a sign of our sharing in the blood of the Messiah, isn’t it? The bread that we break is a sign of our sharing in the body of the Messiah, isn’t it? ¹⁷Because there is one loaf, we who are many are one body, because all of us partake of the one loaf.* 1 CORINTHIANS 10:16–17 ISV

The two rhetorical questions in v. 16 appear to imply that drinking from the cup and eating of the bread – in addition to remembering Jesus Christ and his death – symbolize one’s participation in what Christ’s death accomplished, i.e. forgiveness and thus salvation. However, in view of v. 17, the second rhetorical question may well additionally or alternatively mean that eating from the one loaf of bread symbolizes one being part of and participating in Christ’s body, the church.

Circumcision: Its Needlessness

Circumcision of males is the cutting off of the foreskin. Jewish males undergo circumcision in keeping with both God’s covenant with Abraham (their ancestor), and God’s covenant and law for Israel, i.e. the Mosaic Law.

In regard to God’s covenant and law for Israel, being circumcised signifies one’s adherence to the law – on which the covenant was based – as the way to righteousness. This is in contrast to and at

odds with the way of faith in Jesus Christ, which God introduced in conjunction with the new covenant.

Circumcision does not bring salvation

Now some men came down from Judea [to the church at Antioch] and began to teach the brothers, “Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved.”² When Paul and Barnabas had a major argument and debate with them, the church appointed Paul and Barnabas and some others from among them to go up to meet with the apostles and elders in Jerusalem about this point of disagreement. ... [PETER:] “On the contrary, we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, in the same way as they are.” ACTS 15:1-2, 11

In v. 11 the apostle Peter sides emphatically with Paul and Barnabas (v. 2), indicating that circumcision and adherence to the OT law (which circumcision symbolizes) do not bring salvation.

Circumcision is of no consequence for believers

For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision carries any weight – the only thing that matters is faith working through love. GALATIANS 5:6

Rather, it is our hearts that should be circumcised

Therefore, *circumcise your heart and stop being stubborn.* DEUTERONOMY 10:16 ISV

Circumcision of the heart involves changing to become responsive to God. It involves “cutting off” the rigidity of sin from a person’s heart.

Remember the persecuted

II. Other Significant Practices

It is important for each Christian to understand all significant church practices. Confessing Jesus Christ is one such practice that we need to understand – and be prepared to do. The weekly Sabbath is to some extent ignored by a lot of Christians, many seeing it as not relevant in the new covenant – but a number of theologians would “beg to differ”. Reasons for and against observing it are included here. Fasting is a practice that is a very valuable supplement to such things as prayer and worship. The laying on of hands is a further common practice, and so we should also be familiar with its significance and use in the Bible.

Confession of Jesus Christ

Confessing Jesus Christ is an expression of allegiance to him, as Lord, and involves stating what one believes about him. It is often done formally at one’s baptism and corporately in church with the recital of creeds or “confessions”. In addition, many Christians will experience times in which they should acknowledge Jesus Christ and their faith in him before unbelievers – often at the cost or risk of being persecuted.

Confess Jesus Christ, before others

Therefore, holy brothers and sisters, partners in a heavenly calling, take note of *Jesus, the apostle and high priest whom we confess*, ...

HEBREWS 3:1

[JESUS:] I tell you, whoever *acknowledges me before men*, the Son of Man will also acknowledge before God’s angels. LUKE 12:8

Things to confess about Jesus Christ

For the Jewish leaders had already agreed that anyone who *confessed Jesus to be the Christ* would be put out of the synagogue. JOHN 9:22B

And everyone will *confess that Jesus Christ is Lord* and bring glory to God the Father. PHILIPPIANS 2:11 NCV™

If anyone *confesses that Jesus is the Son of God*, God resides in him and he in God. 1 JOHN 4:15

Keeping the Sabbath Holy

Observe the Sabbath as holy by resting on it

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *“Observe the Sabbath and keep it holy. ⁹You have six days in which to do your work, ¹⁰but the seventh day is a day of rest dedicated to me. On that day no one is to work—neither you, your children, your slaves, your animals, nor the foreigners who live in your country. ¹¹In six days I, the LORD, made the earth, the sky, the sea, and everything in them, but on the seventh day I rested. That is why I, the LORD, blessed the Sabbath and made it holy.*

EXODUS 20:8–11 GNT

Israel was to observe the Sabbath as a sign of being God’s people, identifying themselves with him by resting on the seventh day as he did. The necessity for Christians to observe the Sabbath has been the subject of debate.

Observing the Sabbath enables people to be refreshed

For six days you are to do your work, but on the seventh day you must cease, in order that your ox and your donkey may rest and that your female servant’s son and any hired help may refresh themselves.

EXODUS 23:12

It is permissible to do good and necessary things on the Sabbath

A man was there who had a withered hand. And they asked Jesus, *“Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?”* so that they could accuse him. ¹¹*He said to them, “Would not any one of you, if he had one sheep that fell into a pit on the Sabbath, take hold of it and lift it out? ¹²How much more valuable is a person than a sheep! So it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath.” ¹³Then he said to the man, “Stretch out your hand.” He stretched it out and it was restored, as healthy as the other.* MATTHEW 12:10–13

Verses that may suggest we do not need to keep the Sabbath

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Therefore do not let anyone judge you with respect to food or drink, or in the matter of a feast, new moon, or Sabbath days – ¹⁷these are only the shadow of the things to come, but the reality is Christ!* COLOSSIANS 2:16–17

Fasting

Fasting can be done regularly, with worship and prayer

She [Anna] had lived as a widow since then for eighty–four years. She never left the temple, *worshipping with fasting and prayer night and day.* LUKE 2:37

Fasting implies and promotes earnestness in worship and prayer. When fasting, the ache and craving of hunger brings an earnestness and intensity to our worship and prayers. Fasting also promotes clarity of thought. Furthermore, our hunger serves as a reminder to worship and/or pray throughout the fasting period.

Fasting can be done on particular occasions, in petitioning God

[EZRA:] *So we fasted and asked our God for a safe journey, and he answered our prayer.* EZRA 8:23 GW

The Laying on of Hands

In conveying the gift of the Holy Spirit

Then Peter and John placed their hands on the Samaritans, and they received the Holy Spirit. ACTS 8:17

Note that the laying on of hands to convey the gift of the Holy Spirit is generally done in conjunction with the recipients coming to faith – rather than at a time chosen by those performing the act. Also, it is not essential for a person to have hands laid on them for them to receive the Holy Spirit.

In conveying blessing

After he [Jesus] took the children in his arms, *he placed his hands on them and blessed them.* MARK 10:16

In commissioning for ministry

While they were serving the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, *“Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.”*³*Then, after they had fasted and prayed and placed their hands on them, they sent them off.* ACTS 13:2–3

30. Church Leadership

I. General

Required Characteristics	262
Managing the Church	263
Caring for Church Members	263
Church Members' Duties to Leaders	264

II. Teaching in the Church

What to Teach: God's Word	265
How to Teach	266
False Teachers (I): Their Teaching	266
False Teachers (II): Guarding against Them	267

I. General

Good leadership is one of the most important prerequisites for a healthy church. For a church to function effectively it is critical that leaders know and do what is required of them. It is also important for church members to know what they should expect of leaders – and how they can support their leaders.

Note that a number of verses in this chapter speak of Paul and other NT leaders in their work overseeing a number of churches, or of leaders of the nation of Israel. Such verses are generally readily applicable to leaders of local churches today, and to their relationship with church members.

Required Characteristics

Godliness

For the overseer must be blameless as one entrusted with God's work, not arrogant, not prone to anger, not a drunkard, not violent, not greedy for gain. ⁸Instead he must be hospitable, devoted to what is good, sensible, upright, devout, and self-controlled. [TITUS 1:7–8](#)

Wisdom

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *Select wise and practical men, those known among your tribes, whom I may appoint as your leaders.* [DEUTERONOMY 1:13](#)

Strength and courage

[GOD, TO JOSHUA:] *Be strong and courageous, because you'll be leading this people to inherit the land that I promised to give their ancestors.* [JOSHUA 1:6 ISV](#)

Deep love for church members

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] *Because of our love for you we were ready to share with you not only the Good News from God but even our own lives. You were so dear to us!* [1 THESSALONIANS 2:8 GNT](#)

Managing the Church

As a leader, provide good leadership

Elders who *provide effective leadership* must be counted worthy of double honor, especially those who work hard in speaking and teaching. [1 TIMOTHY 5:17](#)

Be gentle and sparing in the use of authority

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] Instead, *we were gentle among you, like a nursing mother tenderly caring for her own children.* [1 THESSALONIANS 2:7B ISV](#)

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] For this reason, *although in the Messiah I have complete freedom to order you to do what is proper, ⁹I prefer to make my appeal on the basis of love.* [PHILEMON 1:8–9A ISV](#)

Be an example for others to follow

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] For you know yourselves how you *must imitate us, because we did not behave without discipline among you, ⁸and we did not eat anyone's food without paying. Instead, in toil and drudgery we worked night and day in order not to burden any of you.* ⁹It was not because we do not have that right, but *to give ourselves as an example for you to imitate.* [2 THESSALONIANS 3:7–9](#)

Caring for Church Members

Be a shepherd taking care of God's flock

[PAUL, TO LEADERS:] *Watch out for yourselves and for all the flock of which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God that he obtained with the blood of his own Son.* [ACTS 20:28](#)

Pray for church members

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] *We have not stopped praying for you since the first day we heard about you. In fact, we always pray that God will show you everything he wants you to do and that you may have all the wisdom and understanding that his Spirit gives.* [COLOSSIANS 1:9 CEV](#)

Strengthen members in the faith

[PAUL, TO CHURCH MEMBERS:] We are speaking in Christ before God, and *everything we do, dear friends, is to build you up.* 2 CORINTHIANS 12:19B

Work hard at helping church members

[PAUL, SPEAKING TO COLOSSIAN CHURCH MEMBERS ABOUT EPAPHRAS:] For I can testify that *he has worked hard for you and for those in Laodicea and Hierapolis.* COLOSSIANS 4:13

Confront church members over sin

[GOD, TO EZEKIEL:] Son of man, *confront Jerusalem with her abominable practices ...* EZEKIEL 16:2

Church Members' Duties to Leaders

Love your leaders

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] You are so rich in all you have: in faith, speech, and knowledge, in your eagerness to help and in *your love for us.* 2 CORINTHIANS 8:7A GNT

Obey your leaders

Obey your leaders and submit to them, for they are keeping watch over your souls, as those who will have to give an account. Let them do this with joy and not with groaning, for that would be of no advantage to you. HEBREWS 13:17 ESV

Give your leaders material support

Now the one who receives instruction in the word must share all good things with the one who teaches it. GALATIANS 6:6

Remember the persecuted

II. Teaching in the Church

Teaching is one of the main roles of most church leaders. Good teaching is based on God's word, and should be delivered in accordance with the directions and sound examples found in Scripture. On the topic of teaching, one must also be aware of the characteristics of "false" teachers who are so often present in the church, so as to recognize them and deal with them.

What to Teach: God's Word

Teach and preach God's word

Every scripture is inspired by God and useful for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, ¹⁷that the person dedicated to God may be capable and equipped for every good work. 2 TIMOTHY 3:16–17

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *Preach the word!* 2 TIMOTHY 4:2A NKJV

As such, teach God's commands and ways . . .

[JETHRO, TO MOSES:] *You should teach them God's commands and explain to them how they should live and what they should do.* EXODUS 18:20 GNT

. . . and teach the truths of the faith

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *By pointing out such things to the brothers and sisters, you will be a good servant of Christ Jesus, having nourished yourself on the words of the faith and of the good teaching that you have followed.* 1 TIMOTHY 4:6

In v. 6a Paul exhorts Timothy to instruct the believers in the things that he had been writing about. These things were composed of or in line with the "words" or truths of the faith and the good teaching that Timothy himself had followed (v. 6b).

Moreover, read God's word in church worship

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *Until I get there, concentrate on reading Scripture in worship, giving encouraging messages, and teaching people.* 1 TIMOTHY 4:13 GW

How to Teach

Explain God's word and truths

They [Levites] *read from the book of God's law, explaining it and imparting insight.* Thus the people gained understanding from what was read. [NEHEMIAH 8:8](#)

From morning until evening *he* [Paul] *continued to explain the kingdom of God to them,* trying to convince them about Jesus from the law of Moses and the Prophets. [ACTS 28:23B ISV](#)

The manner in which to teach

[PAUL, TO THE CHURCH LEADER TITUS:] *Be sincere and serious in your teaching.* ⁸*Use sound words that cannot be criticized,* so that your enemies may be put to shame by not having anything bad to say about us. [TITUS 2:7B-8 GNT](#)

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *Be very patient when you teach.* [2 TIMOTHY 4:2B GW](#)

False Teachers (I): Their Teaching

False teachers speak lies and delusions of their own, while claiming God's authority

[JEREMIAH:] Then the LORD said to me, *"Those [false] prophets are prophesying lies while claiming my authority!* I did not send them. I did not commission them. I did not speak to them. *They are prophesying to these people false visions, worthless predictions, and the delusions of their own mind.* [JEREMIAH 14:14](#)

They say what their listeners like to hear – appealing and pleasant things

[JEREMIAH, WARNING HIS PEOPLE ABOUT FALSE PROPHETS:] *They are filling you with false hopes.* They are reporting visions of their own imaginations, not something the LORD has given them to say. ¹⁷*They continually say to those who reject what the LORD has said, 'Things will go well for you!' They say to all those who follow the stubborn inclinations of their own hearts, 'Nothing bad will happen to you!'*

[JEREMIAH 23:16B-17](#)

False teachers typically deny Jesus Christ

Who, then, is the liar? It is those who say that Jesus is not the Messiah. Such people are the Enemies of Christ—they reject both the Father and the Son. 1 JOHN 2:22 GNT

False teachers (in view here) typically deny or dilute key aspects of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

False Teachers (II): Guarding against Them

Watch out for false teachers and their teaching – so as not to be deceived

Watch out for false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing but inwardly are voracious wolves. MATTHEW 7:15

Let nobody deceive you with empty words, for because of these things God's wrath comes on the sons of disobedience. EPHESIANS 5:6

Test teachers by comparing their teaching with the Scriptures

The people of Berea were more open-minded than the people of Thessalonica. They were very willing to receive God's message, and *every day they carefully examined the Scriptures to see if what Paul said was true.* ACTS 17:11 GW

False teachers can be recognized by their "fruit"

You will recognize them by their fruit. Grapes are not gathered from thorns or figs from thistles, are they? ¹⁷In the same way, every good tree bears good fruit, but the bad tree bears bad fruit. ¹⁸A good tree is not able to bear bad fruit, nor a bad tree to bear good fruit. MATTHEW 7:16–18

As used here, "fruit" is that which one's inner being or character produces – basically one's words and actions. In a secondary sense, the effect of one's words and actions – particularly on other people – is also one's produce or "fruit".

Part G.

Relating to People

31. Love

I. Loving Qualities

Love: Insights.....	272
Love: Commands.....	273
Mercy.....	274
Gentleness.....	275

II. Antitheses of Love

Selfish Attitudes.....	276
Ill Feelings.....	277
Adverse Speech.....	277
Violent Actions.....	278

I. Loving Qualities

The importance of love could hardly be more emphatically stated by the Bible. Love should encompass every area of our lives and be the basis of all that we do in relating to people. Other personal qualities reflective of love are also regularly applicable in our relationships with other people (and are also discussed in this section).

Note that the teaching in this and the subsequent chapters in *Part G. Relating to People* is also relevant to the preceding part of this book, *Part F. Church Life*.

Love: Insights

What love is

Love is patient, love is kind, it is not envious. Love does not brag, it is not puffed up. ⁵It is not rude, it is not self-serving, it is not easily angered or resentful. ⁶It is not glad about injustice, but rejoices in the truth. ⁷It bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things. 1 CORINTHIANS 13:4-7

In v. 7, “believes all things, hopes all things” means that love: “...is ever ready to believe the best of every person” and that “its hopes are fadeless under all circumstances...” (AMP).

The supremacy of love

[AN EXPERT IN THE LAW, TO JESUS:] *“Which commandment is the most important of all?”* ²⁹*Jesus answered, “The most important is: ‘Listen, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one. ³⁰Love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.’ ³¹The second is: ‘Love your neighbor as yourself.’ There is no other commandment greater than these.”* MARK 12:28B-31

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF THE WAY OF LOVE:] *And now I will show you a way that is beyond comparison. ^{13:1}If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but I do not have love, I am a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. ²And if I have prophecy, and know all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith so that I can remove mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. ³If I give away everything I own, and if*

I give over my body in order to boast, but do not have love, I receive no benefit. ... ¹³*And now these three remain: faith, hope, and love. But the greatest of these is love.* 1 CORINTHIANS 12:31B; 13:1–3, 13

Love: Commands

Live a life of love . . .

As you have heard from the beginning, *his* [God's] *command is this: Live a life of love.* 2 JOHN 1:6B NCV™

Live in love as Christ also loved us. He gave his life for us as an offering and sacrifice, a soothing aroma to God. EPHESIANS 5:2 GW

. . . Do all things in love

Everything you do should be done in love. 1 CORINTHIANS 16:14

Love others as you love yourself . . .

Do not take revenge on anyone or continue to hate him, but *love your neighbor as you love yourself.* I am the LORD. LEVITICUS 19:18 GNT

. . . “Love your neighbor as yourself” sums up God’s law

Owe no one anything, except to *love one another, for the one who loves his neighbor has fulfilled the law.* ⁹*For the commandments, “Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not covet,” (and if there is any other commandment) are summed up in this, “Love your neighbor as yourself.”* ¹⁰*Love does no wrong to a neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.* ROMANS 13:8–10

The whole moral law – all that involves our relationships with other people – is summed up by the command to love others as we love ourselves. In doing so, we fulfill or carry out the law.

Love your enemies and do good to them

[JESUS:] *But I say to you who are listening: Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, ²⁸ bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you. ...* ³¹*Treat others in the same way that you would want them to treat you.* LUKE 6:27–28, 31

Mercy

Mercy involves such things as: not penalizing those subject to one's judgment and retribution (due to things like wrongful action or debt); and doing more than one is bound to do in helping others. It is showing kindness beyond what is required of one or is otherwise considered fitting.

Show mercy

Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful. LUKE 6:36

You must see that justice is done, and must *show kindness and mercy to one another.* ZECHARIAH 7:9B GNT

Be merciful and God will show you mercy

Blessed are the merciful, for they will be shown mercy. MATTHEW 5:7

The final clause refers to being shown mercy by God.

Forgive others and God will forgive you

If you forgive others for the wrongs they do to you, your Father in heaven will forgive you. ¹⁵*But if you don't forgive others, your Father will not forgive your sins.* MATTHEW 6:14–15 CEV

Do not judge others, or God will judge you accordingly

Do not judge others, so that God will not judge you, ²for God will judge you in the same way as you judge others, and he will apply to you the same rules you apply to others. MATTHEW 7:1–2 GNT

We will all face God's judgment but the above passage speaks of the same condemnatory standard of judgment being applied by God to those who exercise it themselves.

Be generous and share with others

[PAUL, INSTRUCTING TIMOTHY WHAT TO TEACH BELIEVERS:] *Tell them to do good, to be rich in good deeds, to be generous givers, sharing with others.* 1 TIMOTHY 6:18

All day long he [a lazy person] continues to crave, while *the righteous one gives without holding back.* PROVERBS 21:26 ISV

Gentleness

Be humble, gentle and patient

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] I, therefore, the prisoner for the Lord, urge you to *live worthily of the calling with which you have been called, ²with all humility and gentleness, with patience, bearing with one another in love, ...* [EPHESIANS 4:1-2](#)

Be meek

[JESUS:] *You have heard that it was said, ‘An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.’ ³⁹But I say to you, do not resist the evildoer. But whoever strikes you on the right cheek, turn the other to him as well. ⁴⁰And if someone wants to sue you and to take your tunic, give him your coat also. ⁴¹And if anyone forces you to go one mile, go with him two. ⁴²Give to the one who asks you, and do not reject the one who wants to borrow from you.* [MATTHEW 5:38-42](#)

The concept of “meekness” involves an approach of non-retaliation and even non-resistance in the face of offences. It is characterized by humility and gentleness.

The command to “not resist the evildoer” (v. 39a) is given in respect to one’s own rights; it is not saying that we should not stand against an evil person on behalf of others. The illustrations that follow (vv. 39b–42) show that one should not retaliate and not insist on one’s rights. Some commentators view these as hyperbole, while others consider such a view to be watering down the extent of what is being taught.

Seek peace, including peace with others

Turn away from evil and do good; *seek peace and pursue it.*
[PSALMS 34:14](#) ESV

Do everything possible on your part to live in peace with everybody.
[ROMANS 12:18](#) GNT

II. Antitheses of Love

We have various tendencies that work counter to love. These largely involve selfish attitudes and ill feelings – along with the adverse speech and actions that they produce. These greatly inhibit and harm our relationships with others, and must be avoided.

Selfish Attitudes

Do not pursue selfish ends

Don't act out of selfish ambition or be conceited. PHILIPPIANS 2:3A GW
... but for those who are self-seeking and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, there will be wrath and fury. ROMANS 2:8 ESV

Do not be greedy

How horrible it will be for you, scribes and Pharisees! You hypocrites! You clean the outside of cups and dishes. But inside they are full of greed and uncontrolled desires. MATTHEW 23:25 GW

Do not covet

'And you shall not covet your neighbor's wife. And you shall not desire your neighbor's house, his field, or his male servant, or his female servant, his ox, or his donkey, or anything that is your neighbor's.' DEUTERONOMY 5:21 ESV

We are not to crave or desire anything that belongs to another.

Seek the interests of others before your own . . .

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *None of you should be looking to your own interests, but to the interests of others. ... ³³Just do as I do; I try to please everyone in all that I do, not thinking of my own good, but of the good of all, so that they might be saved. 1 CORINTHIANS 10:24, 33 GNT*

. . . Do so even at great cost to yourself, as Jesus Christ did

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that although he was rich, he became poor for your sakes, so that you by his poverty could become rich. 2 CORINTHIANS 8:9*

Ill Feelings

Control and avoid anger

When you are angry, do not sin, and be sure to stop being angry before the end of the day. ²⁷*Do not give the devil a way to defeat you. ...* ³¹*Do not be bitter or angry or mad. Never shout angrily or say things to hurt others. Never do anything evil.* EPHESIANS 4:26–27, 31 NCV™

Understand this, my dear brothers and sisters! *Let every person be quick to listen, slow to speak, slow to anger.* ²⁰*For human anger does not accomplish God's righteousness.* JAMES 1:19–20

Do not hate

You must not hate your fellow citizen in your heart. LEVITICUS 19:17A NCV™
If anyone says "I love God" and yet hates his fellow Christian, he is a liar, because the one who does not love his fellow Christian whom he has seen cannot love God whom he has not seen. 1 JOHN 4:20

Get rid of any bitterness or malice

Let all bitterness and wrath and anger and clamor and slander be put away from you, along with all malice. EPHESIANS 4:31 ESV

Do not be jealous

Wild parties, drunkenness, sexual immorality, promiscuity, rivalry, and jealousy cannot be part of our lives. ROMANS 13:13 GW

Adverse Speech

Do not quarrel

Starting a quarrel is like a leak in a dam, so stop it before a fight breaks out. ... ¹⁹*Whoever loves to argue loves to sin.* PROVERBS 17:14, 19A NCV™

Do not slander . . .

So get rid of all evil and all deceit and hypocrisy and envy and all slander. 1 PETER 2:1

. . . and do not gossip

A perverse person spreads dissension, and *a gossip separates the closest friends*. [PROVERBS 16:28](#)

Do not grumble against others

[JAMES, TO BELIEVERS:] *Do not grumble against one another, brothers and sisters, so that you may not be judged*. See, the judge stands before the gates! [JAMES 5:9](#)

Grumbling or complaining against others is an outward expression of inner condemnatory judgment of them – which leaves oneself open to such judgment.

Violent Actions

Do not use violence

[THE KING OF NINEVEH:] Every person and animal must put on sackcloth and must cry earnestly to God, and *everyone must turn from their evil way of living and from the violence that they do*. [JONAH 3:8](#)

Do not murder

You shall not murder. [EXODUS 20:13](#)

Do not rape

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *But if the man came across the engaged woman in the field and overpowered her and raped her, then only the rapist must die*. [DEUTERONOMY 22:25](#)

The NT does not propagate the death penalty. Nevertheless its mention in regard to such actions shows the seriousness of the crime.

Do not oppress

Thus says the Lord GOD: Enough, O princes of Israel! *Put away violence and oppression, and execute justice and righteousness*. *Cease your evictions of my people*, declares the Lord GOD. [EZEKIEL 45:9](#) ESV

32. Justice

I. Justice in Action

Do What Is Just and Right	280
Justice and the Needy (I): Instructions	281
Justice and the Needy (II): Insights.....	282

II. Being True

Faithfulness.....	283
Truthfulness.....	284
Deceitfulness.....	284
Dishonest Gain	285

I. Justice in Action

Topics encompassed by the theme of justice together form a very large proportion of what the Bible says about how to relate to other people. It is essential that we incorporate the Bible's teaching on these topics into our own lives. In doing so, we must be mindful that acting justly involves not only doing what is right ourselves; it also involves ensuring that others are treated fairly – notably the needy.

Do What Is Just and Right

Act justly

No, the LORD has told us what is good. *What he requires of us is this: to do what is just, to show constant love, and to live in humble fellowship with our God.* MICAH 6:8 GNT

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *You must pursue justice alone so that you may live and inherit the land the LORD your God is giving you.* DEUTERONOMY 16:20

In acting justly, do what is right

[GOD:] *Learn to do what is right! Promote justice!* ISAIAH 1:17A

To do what is right and just is more acceptable to the LORD than sacrifice. PROVERBS 21:3 ISV

Maintain justice

This is what the LORD says: *Preserve justice, and do what is right. My salvation is about to come. My righteousness is about to be revealed.* ISAIAH 56:1 GW

Do not show favoritism

You must not deal unjustly in judgment: you must neither show partiality to the poor nor honor the rich. LEVITICUS 19:15A

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] *Before God and Christ Jesus and the elect angels, I solemnly charge you to carry out these commands without prejudice or favoritism of any kind.* 1 TIMOTHY 5:21

Justice and the Needy (I): Instructions

Do not mistreat the needy

Don't oppress widows, orphans, foreigners, and poor people.

ZECHARIAH 7:10A GW

Treat foreigners the same as your native-born

The foreigner who resides with you must be to you like a native citizen among you; so you must love him as yourself, because you were foreigners in the land of Egypt. LEVITICUS 19:34A

Note that foreigners were seen as being vulnerable and needy.

Defend the cause of the needy

Defend the weak and the orphans; defend the rights of the poor and suffering. ⁴Save the weak and helpless; free them from the power of the wicked. PSALMS 82:3–4 NCV™

“Speak up for those who cannot speak for themselves; defend the rights of all those who have nothing. ⁹Speak up and judge fairly, and defend the rights of the poor and needy.” PROVERBS 31:8–9 NCV™

Provide the needy with food and clothing . . .

John answered them, *“The person who has two tunics must share with the person who has none, and the person who has food must do likewise.”* LUKE 3:11

Now in Joppa there was a disciple named Tabitha (which in translation means Dorcas). *She was continually doing good deeds and acts of charity. . . .* ³⁹So Peter got up and went with them, and when he arrived they brought him to the upper room. *All the widows stood beside him, crying and showing him the tunics and other clothing Dorcas used to make while she was with them.* ACTS 9:36, 39

. . . Even sell your possessions so as to give to the poor

[JESUS:] *Sell your possessions and give to the poor.* LUKE 12:33A

They [believers] made it their practice to sell their possessions and goods and to distribute the proceeds to anyone who was in need.

ACTS 2:45 ISV

Justice and the Needy (II): Insights

Defending and providing for the needy are part of true religion

[GOD, REFERRING TO KING JOSIAH:] *He always did right— he gave justice to the poor and was honest.* ¹⁶*That's what it means to truly know me.*

JEREMIAH 22:15B–16A CEV

Pure and undefiled religion before God the Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their misfortune and to keep oneself unstained by the world. JAMES 1:27

Providing for the needy brings oneself blessing

The one who is gracious to the poor lends to the LORD, and the LORD will repay him for his good deed. PROVERBS 19:17

[JESUS:] *Give, and it will be given to you: A good measure, pressed down, shaken together, running over, will be poured into your lap. For the measure you use will be the measure you receive.* LUKE 6:38

Quite possibly Jesus has giving to the poor primarily in view. This teaching is at least inclusive of it.

God will punish those who ignore the needy

“Then he [Jesus Christ] will say to those on his left, ‘*Depart from me, you accursed, into the eternal fire that has been prepared for the devil and his angels!*’ ⁴²*For I was hungry and you gave me nothing to eat, I was thirsty and you gave me nothing to drink.* ⁴³*I was a stranger and you did not receive me as a guest, naked and you did not clothe me, sick and in prison and you did not visit me.*’ ⁴⁴Then they too will answer, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not give you whatever you needed?’ ⁴⁵Then he will answer them, ‘*I tell you the truth, just as you did not do it for one of the least of these, you did not do it for me.*’ ⁴⁶*And these will depart into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life.*” MATTHEW 25:41–46

II. Being True

In order to do what is right in our relationships with others, we must be true – both faithful and truthful. It is important to remember that faithfulness and truth – with the trust that they generate – are absolutely essential for our relationships with others to work, for so many aspects of our relationships are dependent on them. Accordingly we must avoid deceitfulness and associated dishonest practices. Bear in mind that deceitfulness is arguably the prime characteristic of Satan and evil.

Faithfulness

Be faithful

Never let go of loyalty and faithfulness. Tie them round your neck; write them on your heart. ⁴If you do this, both God and people will be pleased with you. PROVERBS 3:3–4 GNT

Be trustworthy

In the same way, women must be respected by others. They must not speak evil of others. They must be self-controlled and *trustworthy in everything.* 1 TIMOTHY 3:11 NCV™

Stand by others

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *You are the ones who have always stood by me in my trials.* LUKE 22:28 ISV

So Naomi said, “Look, your sister-in-law is returning to her people and to her god. Follow your sister-in-law back home!” ¹⁶*But Ruth replied, “Stop urging me to abandon you! For wherever you go, I will go. Wherever you live, I will live. Your people will become my people, and your God will become my God. ¹⁷Wherever you die, I will die – and there I will be buried. May the LORD punish me severely if I do not keep my promise! Only death will be able to separate me from you!”* RUTH 1:15–17

Ruth’s promise to stand by her bereaved mother-in-law is a superlative expression of loyalty and commitment.

Truthfulness

Speak the truth

These are the things you must do: Speak the truth, each of you, to one another. ZECHARIAH 8:16A

Be honest

If you are a thief, quit stealing. *Be honest* and work hard, so you will have something to give to people in need. EPHESIANS 4:28 CEV

Be sincere

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIAN BELIEVERS:] Our conscience testifies that *we have conducted ourselves in the world with pure motives and godly sincerity*, without earthly wisdom but with God's grace—and especially towards you. 2 CORINTHIANS 1:12B ISV

Have integrity

[GOD, TO SOLOMON:] *You must serve me with integrity and sincerity, just as your father David did.* Do everything I commanded and obey my rules and regulations. 1 KINGS 9:4

Deceitfulness

Do not deceive

Never steal, lie, or deceive your neighbor. LEVITICUS 19:11B GW

Do not lie . . .

[PAUL, TO THE COLOSSIAN BELIEVERS:] *Do not lie to one another* since you have put off the old man with its practices¹⁰ and have been clothed with the new man that is being renewed in knowledge according to the image of the one who created it. COLOSSIANS 3:9–10

. . . and so do not give false testimony

You shall not give false testimony against your neighbor. EXODUS 20:16

Do not use flattery

[DAVID:] People lie to one another; *they flatter and deceive*. ³*May the LORD cut off all flattering lips, and the tongue that boasts!*

PSALMS 12:2–3

Do not plot evil schemes

Do not plan evil in your hearts against one another. ZECHARIAH 8:17A

Deceit is in the heart of those who plot evil, but those who promote peace have joy. PROVERBS 12:20

Dishonest Gain

Note that because much of what can be described as “dishonest gain” involves deceitfulness, a good portion of this section is also relevant to the previous section, *Deceitfulness*.

Do not steal . . .

You shall not steal. EXODUS 20:15

. . . and do not defraud

You shall not cheat your neighbor ... LEVITICUS 19:13A NKJV

Do not take excessive interest or extort money

[EZEKIEL, SPEAKING OF A RIGHTEOUS PERSON:] He keeps his hand from doing wrong. *He does not take too much interest or profit when he lends money.* He obeys my laws and lives by my rules. He will not die for his father’s sin; *he will surely live.* ¹⁸*But his father took other people’s money unfairly and robbed his brother and did what was wrong among his people. So he will die for his own sin.* EZEKIEL 18:17–18 NCV™

Do not accept bribes

Be careful that no one entices you with riches; do not let a large bribe turn you aside. JOB 36:18

33. Wisdom

I. Being Wise

The Precedence of Godly Wisdom	288
Wisdom through God.....	289
Wisdom through Others.....	290
Wise Speech.....	290
Wise Personal Practices	291

II. Antitheses of Wisdom and Knowledge

Foolishness	292
Notably Foolish Practices.....	292
Spiritual Ignorance (I): Causes and Results	293
Spiritual Ignorance (II): Knowledge Lacked.....	294

I. Being Wise

Wisdom is one of the attributes most highly valued in the Bible. Thankfully the Bible says much about how we can gain wisdom. The Bible also contains very astute advice on other topics associated with wisdom, notably speaking – a key medium that we use in relating to others.

The Precedence of Godly Wisdom

“Godly Wisdom” is used here to denote the wisdom which the Bible advocates, wisdom which is based on the Bible’s teachings.

Godly wisdom is superior to anything else

Wisdom is supreme – so acquire wisdom, and whatever you acquire, acquire understanding! PROVERBS 4:7

[WISDOM:] *Grab hold of my instruction in lieu of money and knowledge instead of the finest gold, ¹¹because wisdom is better than precious gems and nothing you desire can compare to it.* PROVERBS 8:10–11 ISV

Worldly wisdom is flawed and inferior to the wisdom of God

No one should fool himself. *If anyone among you thinks that he is wise by this world’s standards, he should become a fool, in order to be really wise. ¹⁹For what this world considers to be wisdom is nonsense in God’s sight. As the scripture says, “God traps the wise in their cleverness”; ...* 1 CORINTHIANS 3:18–19 GNT

Here Paul portrays worldly wisdom as inferior to the wisdom of God – to both the wisdom of God himself (v. 19) and to godly wisdom (v. 18), which ultimately comes from God. Note that in saying that one should become a “fool” (v. 18), Paul means that one needs to forgo aspiring to the flawed wisdom of this world and recognize the shortcomings of one’s understanding – in effect see oneself as a “fool” – in order to be open to true, godly wisdom.

Worldly wisdom is ultimately futile, even detrimental

“The Lord knows that the thoughts of the wise are futile.”

1 CORINTHIANS 3:20B

Wisdom through God

Fearing God is the beginning of wisdom

The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom, and the knowledge of the Holy One is insight. [PROVERBS 9:10](#) ESV

Fearing God is the beginning of wisdom as it leads us to base our thinking and life on God and his teachings or commands – the source of true wisdom for life. For fear of God moves us to obey God's commands and do what is right, thus manifesting wisdom (as indicated in the following two subsections).

Obeying God's commands brings wisdom . . .

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] Look! I have taught you statutes and ordinances just as the LORD my God told me to do, so that you might carry them out in the land you are about to enter and possess. ⁶*So be sure to do them, because this will testify of your wise understanding to the people who will learn of all these statutes and say, "Indeed, this great nation is a very wise people."* [DEUTERONOMY 4:5-6](#)

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *I have greater wisdom than those who are old, because I obey your commands.* [PSALMS 119:100](#) GNT

. . . Wisdom involves doing what is right – and avoiding evil

[A WISE FATHER, TO HIS SON:] I will guide you *in the way of wisdom* and I will lead you *in upright paths*. [PROVERBS 4:11](#)

A wise person is cautious and turns from evil, but a fool throws off restraint and is overconfident. [PROVERBS 14:16](#)

One should in fact ask God for wisdom . . .

But if anyone is deficient in wisdom, he should ask God, who gives to all generously and without reprimand, and it will be given to him.
[JAMES 1:5](#)

. . . For it is God who gives wisdom

He gives wisdom to the wise and knowledge to the discerning.
[DANIEL 2:21B](#) ISV

Wisdom through Others

Pay attention to instruction

Apply your heart to instruction and your ears to the words of knowledge. ... ¹⁹*Listen, my child, and be wise, and guide your heart on the right way.* PROVERBS 23:12, 19

Heed discipline and correction

A fool rejects his father's discipline, but whoever heeds reproof shows good sense. ... ³²*The one who refuses correction despises himself, but whoever hears reproof acquires understanding.* PROVERBS 15:5, 32

Here "reproof" appears to refer to a rebuke or reprimand, a form of discipline (v. 5) or correction (v. 32).

Wise Speech

Be quick to listen and slow to speak

Understand this, my dear brothers and sisters! *Let every person be quick to listen, slow to speak, slow to anger.* JAMES 1:19

Use few words

When words abound, transgression is inevitable, but the one who restrains his words is wise. PROVERBS 10:19

Speak graciously

The words spoken by the wise are gracious ... ECCLESIASTES 10:12A ISV
Let your speech always be gracious, seasoned with salt, so that you may know how you should answer everyone. COLOSSIANS 4:6

Remember that our words are determined by our "heart"

The mouth speaks the things that are in the heart. ³⁵*Good people have good things in their hearts, and so they say good things. But evil people have evil in their hearts, so they say evil things.* MATTHEW 12:34B–35 NCV™

Wise Personal Practices

The following topics are prominent in what are known as the Bible's wisdom books, notably in Proverbs and Ecclesiastes – as well as occurring elsewhere in the Bible.

Be self-controlled

Foolish people lose their tempers, but wise people control theirs.

PROVERBS 29:11 NCV™

Do not act in haste

It is dangerous to have zeal without knowledge, and *the one who acts hastily makes poor choices.* PROVERBS 19:2

Work hard

[PAUL, TO THE THESSALONIAN BELIEVERS:] *We didn't waste our time loafing,*⁸ and we didn't accept food from anyone without paying for it. We didn't want to be a burden to any of you, *so night and day we worked as hard as we could.* 2 THESSALONIANS 3:7B–8 CEV

She [a wife of noble character] *obtains wool and flax, and she is pleased to work with her hands.*¹⁴ *She is like the merchant ships; she brings her food from afar.*¹⁵ *She also gets up while it is still night, and provides food for her household and a portion to her female servants.*¹⁶ *She considers a field and buys it; from her own income she plants a vineyard.*¹⁷ *She begins her work vigorously, and she strengthens her arms.*¹⁸ *She knows that her merchandise is good, and her lamp does not go out in the night.*¹⁹ *Her hands take hold of the distaff, and her hands grasp the spindle.* PROVERBS 31:13–19

Enjoy life and be happy

[A WISE TEACHER:] *So I recommend the enjoyment of life, for there is nothing better on earth for a person to do except to eat, drink, and enjoy life. So joy will accompany him in his toil during the days of his life which God gives him on earth.* ECCLESIASTES 8:15

[A WISE TEACHER:] *I have concluded that there is nothing better for people than to be happy and to enjoy themselves as long as they live, ...* ECCLESIASTES 3:12

II. Antitheses of Wisdom and Knowledge

Foolishness and spiritual ignorance are the antitheses of godly wisdom and knowledge. Moreover, foolishness and spiritual ignorance are very closely related to ungodliness; for ungodliness is the prime cause of them and further ungodliness results from them. Foolishness and spiritual ignorance with their consequences, stand in stark contrast to wisdom and her blessings.

Foolishness

Fools spurn and lack wisdom

Fearing the LORD is the beginning of moral knowledge, but *fools despise wisdom and instruction*. PROVERBS 1:7

Wisdom is unattainable for a fool; in court he does not open his mouth. PROVERBS 24:7

Foolishness involves disobedience to God . . .

Then Samuel said to Saul, “*You have acted foolishly. You haven’t obeyed the commandment of the LORD your God, which he commanded you.*” 1 SAMUEL 13:13A ISV

. . . As such, foolishness encompasses doing wrong

A foolish person enjoys doing wrong, but a person with understanding enjoys doing what is wise. PROVERBS 10:23 NCV™

Notably Foolish Practices

Being quick-tempered is foolish

A person who has a quick temper does foolish things, and a person with crafty schemes is hated. PROVERBS 14:17

Drunkness and gluttony are unwise, causing one trouble

[A WISE TEACHER:] *Listen, my child, and be wise, and guide your heart on the right way.* ²⁰*Do not spend time among drunkards, among*

those who eat too much meat, ²¹because drunkards and gluttons become impoverished, and drowsiness clothes them with rags.

PROVERBS 23:19–21

Indulging in pleasure is foolish and pointless

[A WISE TEACHER:] *I said of partying, “It is folly,” and of self-indulgent pleasure, “It accomplishes nothing!”* ECCLESIASTES 2:2

Further notably foolish practices

He who commits adultery lacks sense; he who does it destroys himself. PROVERBS 6:32 ESV

The one who conceals hatred utters lies, and the one who spreads slander is certainly a fool. PROVERBS 10:18

Those who trust in themselves are foolish, but those who live wisely will be kept safe. PROVERBS 28:26 NCV™

Spiritual Ignorance (I): Causes and Results

Spiritual ignorance is caused basically by sin

[JESUS:] *The light has come into the world, but people loved the darkness more than the light because their actions were evil. ²⁰Everyone who practices wickedness hates the light and does not come to the light, so that his actions may not be exposed.* JOHN 3:19B–20 ISV

Due to people’s evil deeds, they spurn the spiritual light that is Jesus Christ and his truth. For this light exposes their deeds for what they really are – evil. Spurning Christ’s light means spiritual ignorance.

Spiritual ignorance is caused partly by the ungodly being closed-minded

They [godless people] are darkened in their understanding, being alienated from the life of God because of *the ignorance that is in them due to the hardness of their hearts.* EPHESIANS 4:18

This hardness of heart indicates that such people have “shut their minds” (NLT) – being stubborn (cf. CEV, GNT) and refusing to listen (cf. NCV).

Spiritual Ignorance (II): Knowledge Lacked

The assertions contained in the subheadings in this section are typically true of ungodly people. Having said this, not all ungodly people and unbelievers are totally ignorant of all the things mentioned here.

The ungodly do not know God or Jesus Christ

Then they [the Pharisees] began asking him, “Who is your father?” *Jesus answered, “You do not know either me or my Father. If you knew me you would know my Father too.”* JOHN 8:19

The ungodly do not comprehend God’s word

[JESUS, TO THE JEWISH RELIGIOUS LEADERS:] *You study the scriptures thoroughly because you think in them you possess eternal life, and it is these same scriptures that testify about me, ⁴⁰but you are not willing to come to me so that you may have life.* JOHN 5:39–40

Although they diligently studied the Scriptures, the Jewish leaders – who had in fact become in many ways ungodly – did not comprehend that the Scriptures spoke about Jesus, the way to life.

The ungodly are ignorant of and deceived about their sin

An evil man is rebellious to the core. He does not fear God, ²for he is too proud to recognize and give up his sin. PSALMS 36:1–2

This is the way of an adulterous woman: she eats and wipes her mouth and says, “I have not done wrong.” PROVERBS 30:20

The ungodly are largely oblivious of God’s pending punishment – which they will bear

[GOD:] *At that time I will search Jerusalem with lamps, and I will punish the men who are complacent, those who say in their hearts, ‘The LORD will not do good, nor will he do ill.’* ZEPHANIAH 1:12 ESV

34. Common Relationships

I. Family Relationships

Prologue: Issues regarding Marriage	296
Spouses	297
Parents' Duties to Children	298
Children's Duties to Parents	299

II. Civil Relationships

Citizens' Duties to Authorities	300
Authorities' Duties to Citizens	301
Servants and Masters	302

I. Family Relationships

The Bible contains discerning insights and directions regarding relationships with those who are closest to us. As such these teachings are among the ones which are the most often applicable to our lives.

Prologue: Issues regarding Marriage

Unmarried people can be fully devoted to the Lord

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] I would like you to be free from worry. *An unmarried man concerns himself with the Lord's work, because he is trying to please the Lord.* ³³*But a married man concerns himself with worldly matters, because he wants to please his wife;* ³⁴*and so he is pulled in two directions. An unmarried woman or a virgin concerns herself with the Lord's work, because she wants to be dedicated both in body and spirit; but a married woman concerns herself with worldly matters, because she wants to please her husband.* ³⁵I am saying this because I want to help you. *I am not trying to put restrictions on you. Instead, I want you to do what is right and proper, and to give yourselves completely to the Lord's service without any reservation.* 1 CORINTHIANS 7:32–35 GNT

Do not marry outside of God's people

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Do not become partners with those who do not believe, for what partnership is there between righteousness and lawlessness, or what fellowship does light have with darkness?* ¹⁵*And what agreement does Christ have with Beliar? Or what does a believer share in common with an unbeliever?* 2 CORINTHIANS 6:14–15

A person should have only one spouse

An elder must *be blameless, the husband of one wife*, with faithful children who cannot be charged with dissipation or rebellion. TITUS 1:6

Remarriage and adultery

[JESUS:] And I say to you: *whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another, commits adultery.* MATTHEW 19:9 ESV

Spouses

A husband and wife should be as one

The LORD God used the rib from the man to make a woman, and then he brought the woman to the man. ²³And the man said, “Now, *this is someone whose bones came from my bones, whose body came from my body. I will call her ‘woman,’ because she was taken out of man.*”²⁴*So a man will leave his father and mother and be united with his wife, and the two will become one body.* GENESIS 2:22–24 NCV™

Just as originally the man and the woman were of the one body (vv. 22–23), so a husband and wife will be united as “one body” (v. 24). The term “one body” appears to encompass a oneness in spirit, and is signified and expressed through sexual bonding.

Husbands should love their wives

Husbands, love your wives just as Christ loved the church and gave himself for her ... EPHESIANS 5:25

This calls for a love that is ever persistent and is all surpassing, even to the point of sacrificing one’s life.

Wives should submit to their husbands

Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord. ²³*For the husband is the head of the wife even as Christ is the head of the church, his body, and is himself its Savior.* ²⁴*Now as the church submits to Christ, so also wives should submit in everything to their husbands.* EPHESIANS 5:22–24 ESV

Such submission should be voluntary and willing. The corresponding authority of the husband is not about control and should only be practiced in a Christ-like manner and in love, which should characterize all he does in relating to his wife.

Do not commit adultery

You shall not commit adultery. EXODUS 20:14

Avoid divorce

So they [husband and wife] are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let no one separate. MATTHEW 19:6

Parents' Duties to Children

Parents should love their children

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF WOMEN IN THE CHURCH:] In this way they [older women] will train the younger women to love their husbands, *to love their children*, ... [TITUS 2:4](#)

Parents should care for their children

[PAUL, TO THE THESSALONIAN BELIEVERS:] But we were gentle when we were with you, *like a mother taking care of her children*.

[1 THESSALONIANS 2:7](#) GNT

[MOSES, SPEAKING TO THE ISRAELITES OF GOD'S CARE:] You saw how *he brought you safely all the way to this place, just as a father would carry his son*. [DEUTERONOMY 1:31B](#) GNT

Parents should discipline their children

Discipline your children while they are young enough to learn. If you don't, you are helping them to destroy themselves. [PROVERBS 19:18](#) GNT

Besides this, *we have had earthly fathers who disciplined us and we respected them.* [HEBREWS 12:9A](#) ESV

Parents should teach their children about God and his deeds, inspiring them to trust and obey God

We will tell the next generation about the LORD's praiseworthy acts, about his strength and the amazing things he has done. ⁵He established a rule in Jacob; he set up a law in Israel. He commanded our ancestors to make his deeds known to their descendants, ⁶so that the next generation, children yet to be born, might know about them. They will grow up and tell their descendants about them. ⁷Then they will place their confidence in God. They will not forget the works of God, and they will obey his commands. [PSALMS 78:4B-7](#)

This speaks of parents telling their children of God's deeds and power (v. 4) and subsequently of his commands (vv. 5–6). Verse 7 then concludes that in light of God's wonderful deeds for them, the children would trust God and obey his commands.

Children's Duties to Parents

Children are to honor their parents

"Honor your father and mother," which is the first commandment accompanied by a promise, namely, ³"that it may go well with you and that you will live a long time on the earth." EPHESIANS 6:2-3

Children are to obey their parents

Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord.
COLOSSIANS 3:20 ESV

Children should heed their parents' teaching

[A WISE FATHER, TO HIS SON:] *My son, keep your father's commands, and don't forget your mother's teaching.* ²¹*Keep their words in mind forever as though you had them tied around your neck.* ²²*They will guide you when you walk. They will guard you when you sleep. They will speak to you when you are awake.* ²³*These commands are like a lamp; this teaching is like a light. And the correction that comes from them will help you have life.* PROVERBS 6:20-23 NCV™

"They will guard you when you sleep" (v. 22) speaks of the security or protection that living by such teaching provides.

Children are to help their parents

But if a widow has children or grandchildren, they should first learn to fulfill their duty toward their own household and so repay their parents what is owed them. For this is what pleases God. 1 TIMOTHY 5:4

Remember the persecuted

II. Civil Relationships

In addition to relationships with family members, the Bible looks at other relationships which have a marked effect on our lives. In doing so, it gives wise and challenging teaching regarding relationships between citizens and governing authorities, and between employees and employers.

Citizens' Duties to Authorities

Citizens should submit to and obey the governing authorities

[PAUL, INSTRUCTING TITUS WHAT TO TEACH BELIEVERS:] Remind them *to be subject to rulers and authorities, to be obedient*, to be ready for every good work. [TITUS 3:1](#)

As with the command "be subject to", the command to "be obedient" is also given in regard to "rulers and authorities".

For authorities are established by God and punish wrongdoers

Every person should obey the government in power. No government would exist if it hadn't been established by God. The governments which exist have been put in place by God. ²Therefore, whoever resists the government opposes what God has established. Those who resist will bring punishment on themselves. ³People who do what is right don't have to be afraid of the government. But people who do what is wrong should be afraid of it. [ROMANS 13:1-3A GW](#)

But citizens should defy commands that conflict with God's will

Nebuchadnezzar spoke up and said: 'Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego! He sent his angel to deliver his servants who trusted in him. *They disobeyed the king's command and were willing to risk their lives in order not to serve or worship any god except their own God.* [DANIEL 3:28 ISV](#)

The chief priest questioned them. ²⁸*He said, "We gave you strict orders not to mention Jesus' name when you teach. Yet, you've filled Jerusalem with your teachings. You want to take revenge on us for putting that man to death."* ²⁹*Peter and the other apostles answered, "We must obey God rather than people.* [ACTS 5:27B-29 GW](#)

Authorities' Duties to Citizens

Authorities should act and rule according to God's ways

[MOSES, GIVING INSTRUCTIONS FOR A KING:] *When he sits on his royal throne he must make a copy of this law on a scroll given to him by the Levitical priests. ¹⁹It must be with him constantly and he must read it as long as he lives, so that he may learn to revere the LORD his God and observe all the words of this law and these statutes and carry them out.* DEUTERONOMY 17:18–19

And *he* [King Hezekiah] *did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, according to all that David his father had done.* 2 KINGS 18:3 ESV

Authorities should rule as servants of God and their people

[PAUL:] Would you like to be unafraid of those in authority? Then do what is good, and they will praise you, ⁴*because they are God's servants working for your own good.* ROMANS 13:3B–4A GNT

[Elders, to King Rehoboam], *"If you will be a servant to this people today and serve them, and speak good words to them when you answer them, then they will be your servants forever."* 1 KINGS 12:7B ESV

Authorities should rule wisely

[GOD, TO ISRAEL:] I will give you leaders who will be faithful to me. *They will lead you with knowledge and insight.* JEREMIAH 3:15

Authorities should rule justly

[THE QUEEN OF SHEBA, TO KING SOLOMON:] Because of your God's love for Israel and his lasting commitment to them, *he made you king over them so you could make just and right decisions.* 2 CHRONICLES 9:8B

Authorities should defend the needy

[INSTRUCTIONS TO A KING:] *"Speak up for those who cannot speak for themselves; defend the rights of all those who have nothing. ⁹Speak up and judge fairly, and defend the rights of the poor and needy."* PROVERBS 31:8–9 NCV™

Servants and Masters

A number of verses in this section refer to slaves rather than servants. Generally the teaching regarding one of them is also very much applicable to the other.

Servants should be obedient, submissive and respectful

Slaves, obey your earthly masters in every respect, not only when they are watching – like those who are strictly people-pleasers – but with a sincere heart, fearing the Lord. [COLOSSIANS 3:22](#)

Servants, be subject to your masters with all respect, not only to the good and gentle but also to the unjust. [1 PETER 2:18](#) ESV

Servants should be trustworthy and faithful

They [slaves] should not steal from them but should show their masters they can be fully trusted so that in everything they do they will make the teaching of God our Savior attractive. [TITUS 2:10](#) NCV™

And he [a servant] who had received the five talents came forward, bringing five talents more, saying, ‘Master, you delivered to me five talents; here I have made five talents more.’²¹ His master said to him, ‘Well done, good and faithful servant. You have been faithful over a little; I will set you over much. Enter into the joy of your master.’

[MATTHEW 25:20–21](#) ESV

Masters must treat servants justly

Masters, treat your slaves with justice and fairness, because you know that you also have a master in heaven. [COLOSSIANS 4:1](#)

Masters must not withhold servants’ wages

You must not withhold the wages of the hired laborer overnight until morning. [LEVITICUS 19:13B](#)

35. Spreading the Gospel

I. Instructions

Tell Others the Gospel.....	304
What Things to Explain	304
How to Spread the Message.....	306
Supplementary Actions.....	307

II. Insights

Insights on the Gospel Message	308
The Need to Spread the Gospel	309
God and the Gospel's Effectiveness	310

I. Instructions

The theme of spreading the gospel, or message about Jesus Christ, pervades the New Testament and should be also one of the main focuses of our lives. This section largely looks at what we need to say and do, in advancing the spread of the gospel.

Tell Others the Gospel

Tell others the gospel message about Jesus Christ

So Philip started speaking, and beginning with this scripture *proclaimed the good news about Jesus to him* [an Ethiopian]. **ACTS 8:35**
 [PAUL:] Timothy, our brother, works with us for God and *helps us tell people the Good News about Christ*. **1 THESSALONIANS 3:2B** NCV™

Tell all people, everywhere

Then he [Jesus] told them: *Go and preach the good news to everyone in the world. ...* ²⁰*Then the disciples left and preached everywhere*.
MARK 16:15, 20A CEV

Do not be ashamed of the gospel

[PAUL:] For *I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is God's power for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek*. **ROMANS 1:16**

What Things to Explain

Explain who Jesus Christ is

Soon he [Paul] went to the Jewish meeting places and started *telling people that Jesus is the Son of God*. **ACTS 9:20** CEV

Paul became wholly absorbed with proclaiming the word, *testifying to the Jews that Jesus was the Christ*. **ACTS 18:5B**

[PETER, TO A CROWD OF LARGELY JEWS:] Therefore *let all the house of Israel know beyond a doubt that God has made this Jesus whom you crucified both Lord and Christ*. **ACTS 2:36**

Tell people about Jesus' death and resurrection . . .

[PAUL:] *I passed on to you what I received, which is of the greatest importance: ⁴that Christ died for our sins, as written in the Scriptures; ⁵that he was buried and that he was raised to life three days later, as written in the Scriptures; that he appeared to Peter and then to all twelve apostles.* 1 CORINTHIANS 15:3–5 GNT

. . . and tell people about the results

What we mean is that *God was in Christ, offering peace and forgiveness to the people of this world. And he has given us the work of sharing his message about peace.* 2 CORINTHIANS 5:19 CEV

We are to tell others that because of Jesus Christ's death, their sins can be forgiven and they can be at peace with God.

Tell people about the kingdom of God

From morning until evening he [Paul] explained things to them, testifying about the kingdom of God and trying to convince them about Jesus from both the law of Moses and the prophets. ACTS 28:23B

Tell people about what God is like and what he has done . . .

Sing to the LORD! Bless his name! Proclaim his deliverance every day! ³Declare his glory among the nations and his awesome deeds among all the peoples! PSALMS 96:2–3 ISV

This illustrates that we should proclaim God's salvation, glory and marvelous deeds to all people and nations.

. . . and tell what God has done for you

[JESUS, TO A MAN HE HAD HEALED:] *“Return to your home, and declare what God has done for you.” So he went away, proclaiming throughout the whole town what Jesus had done for him.* LUKE 8:39

Tell people how they should respond

[PAUL:] *To Jews and Gentiles alike I gave solemn warning that they should turn from their sins to God and believe in our Lord Jesus.* ACTS 20:21 GNT

How to Spread the Message

Present the gospel accurately and plainly

He [Apollos] had been instructed in the way of the Lord, and with great enthusiasm *he spoke and taught accurately the facts about Jesus*, although he knew only the baptism of John. [ACTS 18:25](#)

[PAUL:] We use no trickery, and *we do not change the teaching of God. We teach the truth plainly*, showing everyone who we are. Then they can know in their hearts what kind of people we are in God's sight. [2 CORINTHIANS 4:2B](#) NCV™

Spread the gospel by the Holy Spirit

They [past prophets] were shown that they were serving not themselves but you, in regard to the things now announced to you through *those who proclaimed the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit* sent from heaven – things angels long to catch a glimpse of.

[1 PETER 1:12](#)

Spreading the gospel by the Holy Spirit involves relying on the Holy Spirit's guidance and power (cf. [1 Corinthians 2:4–5](#)).

Spread the gospel boldly – with God's help

So he [Saul] was staying with them, associating openly with them in Jerusalem, *speaking out boldly in the name of the Lord*. [ACTS 9:28](#)

[PAUL, TO THE THESSALONIAN BELIEVERS:] As you remember, we had been mistreated and insulted at Philippi. *But God gave us the courage to tell you the good news about him, even though many people caused us trouble*. [1 THESSALONIANS 2:2](#) CEV

Work hard at spreading the gospel message

[PAUL:] So we preach Christ to everyone. With all possible wisdom we warn and teach them in order to bring each one into God's presence as a mature individual in union with Christ. ²⁹*To get this done I toil and struggle, using the mighty strength which Christ supplies and which is at work in me*. [COLOSSIANS 1:28–29](#) GNT

Note that here Paul is probably referring to his evangelistic work in spreading the gospel as well as to his pastoral work amongst Christians.

Supplementary Actions

Pray for your proclamation of the gospel . . .

[THE EARLY BELIEVERS:] And now, Lord, pay attention to their threats, and *grant to your servants to speak your message with great courage,* ³⁰*while you extend your hand to heal, and to bring about miraculous signs and wonders through the name of your holy servant Jesus.* ³¹*When they had prayed, the place where they were assembled together was shaken, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak the word of God courageously.* ACTS 4:29–31

. . . and pray for others who proclaim the gospel

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Be sure to pray that God will make a way for us to spread his message and explain the mystery about Christ, even though I am in jail for doing this.* ⁴*Please pray that I will make the message as clear as possible.* COLOSSIANS 4:3–4 CEV

Pray for the salvation of unbelievers

[PAUL:] Brothers and sisters, *my heart's desire and prayer to God on behalf of my fellow Israelites is for their salvation.* ROMANS 10:1

Act in the interests of others for the sake of the gospel

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Just do as I do; I try to please everyone in all that I do, not thinking of my own good, but of the good of all, so that they might be saved.* 1 CORINTHIANS 10:33 GNT

Act in a way that is consistent with the gospel

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Only conduct yourselves in a manner worthy of the gospel of Christ so that – whether I come and see you or whether I remain absent – I should hear that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind, by contending side by side for the faith of the gospel, ...* PHILIPPIANS 1:27

Conducting oneself “in a manner worthy of the gospel” – a manner consistent with its message – is an important aspect of “contending... for the faith of the gospel”.

II. Insights

This section provides insights on the gospel message itself and on why it is so critical that we tell others the gospel. It also teaches us that in all our efforts to do so, we must bear in mind that the effectiveness of the message comes from God – and that people's responses to it are in his hands, not ours.

Insights on the Gospel Message

The gospel is not made up by men – it is true

[PAUL:] Now I want you to know, brothers and sisters, that *the gospel I preached is not of human origin*. ¹²*For I did not receive it or learn it from any human source; instead I received it by a revelation of Jesus Christ.* GALATIANS 1:11–12

But Paul replied, “I have not lost my mind, most excellent Festus, but *am speaking true and rational words*. ²⁶*For the king knows about these things, and I am speaking freely to him, because I cannot believe that any of these things has escaped his notice, for this was not done in a corner.* ACTS 26:25–26

Verse 26 makes a very important point attesting to the truth of the gospel. The events it is based on were widely known, familiar to the king, as they did not take place in some obscure setting.

The gospel reveals God's secret plan concerning Jesus Christ

[PAUL:] To me, though I am the very least of all the saints, this grace was given, *to preach to the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ, and to bring to light for everyone what is the plan of the mystery hidden for ages in God who created all things, ...* EPHESIANS 3:8B–9 ESV

The gospel is good news

God sent his word to the people of Israel and brought them *the Good News of peace through Jesus Christ*. ACTS 10:36A GW

Note that the Greek word which is often translated as “gospel” basically means “good news”.

The Need to Spread the Gospel

We are responsible for telling others the gospel

[PAUL:] For *I have an obligation to all peoples, to the civilized and to the savage, to the educated and to the ignorant.* ¹⁵*So then, I am eager to preach the Good News to you also who live in Rome.*

ROMANS 1:14–15 GNT

Like Paul, believers have an obligation or responsibility to tell all people – people of all nations and levels of understanding.

Through believers spreading the gospel others come to believe

[JESUS:] I'm not praying only for them [the disciples]. I'm also praying for *those who will believe in me through their message.* JOHN 17:20 GW
But *a lot of people who had heard the message believed it.* ACTS 4:4A CEV

There are many people ready to respond to the gospel – but they need someone to tell them

When he [Jesus] saw the crowds, he had compassion on them because they were bewildered and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd. ³⁷Then he said to his disciples, *“The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. ³⁸Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out workers into his harvest.”* MATTHEW 9:36–38

There are many ready to respond to the gospel – to be “harvested”. But more workers are needed to proclaim the gospel to them.

The gospel brings salvation, saving those who respond to it

[PAUL, TO THE EPHESIAN BELIEVERS:] And you also became God's people when you heard the true message, *the Good News that brought you salvation.* EPHESIANS 1:13A GNT

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] Go into all the world and *preach the gospel to every creature.* ¹⁶*The one who believes and is baptized will be saved, but the one who does not believe will be condemned.* MARK 16:15B–16

God and the Gospel's Effectiveness

The gospel is the power of God to save – though it may seem foolish to the world

[PAUL:] For I am not ashamed of *the gospel, for it is God's power for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.* ROMANS 1:16

[PAUL:] For *the message about the cross is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is the power of God.* 1 CORINTHIANS 1:18

The gospel is not dependent on us and our presentation of it – but on the Holy Spirit and God's power

[PAUL, TO THE CORINTHIANS:] *My conversation and my preaching were not with persuasive words of wisdom, but with a demonstration of the Spirit and of power, ⁵so that your faith would not be based on human wisdom but on the power of God.* 1 CORINTHIANS 2:4–5

The effectiveness of Paul's message was not due to any great display of wisdom on his part, but to the Holy Spirit and God's power, working through him and in the minds of his listeners.

The Holy Spirit testifies about Jesus Christ to people, fostering belief

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] When the Advocate comes, whom I will send you from the Father – *the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father – he will testify about me, ²⁷and you also will testify, because you have been with me from the beginning.* JOHN 15:26–27

The Holy Spirit testifies to non-believers about the reality of Jesus Christ and the truth of the gospel message. He does this often through believers as they tell others the gospel (which Jesus quite possibly alludes to here). This work of the Holy Spirit is crucial to the effectiveness of the gospel's proclamation (cf. 1 Corinthians 12:3).

God and Jesus at times confirm the gospel message by miracles

They [Paul and Barnabas] spoke boldly about the Lord, who confirmed their message about his good will by having them perform miracles and do amazing things. ACTS 14:3 GW

Part H.

Persevering

36. Standing Firm

I. General

Be Faithful to God	314
Remember God and His Word	314
Hold to the Faith	315
Be Ready for Jesus Christ's Return.....	316

II. Spiritual Warfare

The Existence of Spiritual Warfare	317
Engaging in Spiritual Warfare.....	318
Counteraction of Demons.....	319
Ungodly Spiritualistic Practices.....	320

I. General

The New Testament contains numerous warnings and exhortations to be faithful to God and to hold to the Christian faith. It is every Christian's constant challenge to do so. We need to stand firm, until the end – while ever watching for Jesus Christ's return and the fulfillment of our hope.

Be Faithful to God

Be faithful to God and Jesus Christ

[SOLOMON, TO THE PEOPLE:] *May you, his people, always be faithful to the LORD our God, obeying all his laws and commands, as you do today.* 1 KINGS 8:61 GNT

When he arrived and saw how God had blessed the people, he was glad and *urged them all to be faithful and true to the Lord with all their hearts.* ACTS 11:23 GNT

Serve God faithfully

Obey the LORD and *serve him faithfully with all your heart.* Remember the great things he has done for you. 1 SAMUEL 12:24 GNT

Do not be unfaithful to God by not obeying him

So Saul died because *he was unfaithful to the LORD and did not obey the LORD's instructions ...* 1 CHRONICLES 10:13A

Remember God and His Word

Ensure you remember God . . .

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *Be sure you do not forget the LORD your God by not keeping his commandments, ordinances, and statutes that I am giving you today. ...¹⁸You must remember the LORD your God, for he is the one who gives ability to get wealth; if you do this he will confirm his covenant that he made by oath to your ancestors, even as he has to this day.* DEUTERONOMY 8:11, 18

... and remember what God has done

Recall the miraculous deeds he performed, his mighty acts and the judgments he decreed, ... 1 CHRONICLES 16:12

Remember God's word and commands ...

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *I will take pleasure in your laws and remember your words. ...* ⁹³*I won't ever forget your teachings, because you give me new life by following them.* PSALMS 119:16, 93 CEV

... Persistently meditate on God's word and commands

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *O how I love your law! All day long I meditate on it. ...* ¹⁴⁸*My eyes anticipate the nighttime hours, so that I can meditate on your word.* PSALMS 119:97, 148

Hold to the Faith

Continue to live by Christian teaching

[JOHN, TO HIS FRIEND GAIUS:] *I was so happy when some fellow-Christians arrived and told me how faithful you are to the truth—just as you always live in the truth.* 3 JOHN 1:3 GNT

Grow in your knowledge of God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *You will produce fruit in every good work and grow in the knowledge of God.* COLOSSIANS 1:10 NCV™

Stand firm until the end ...

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *And you will be hated by everyone because of my name. But the one who endures to the end will be saved.* MATTHEW 10:22

... Persist so that you will receive the reward

So do not throw away your confidence, because it has great reward. ³⁶For you need endurance in order to do God's will and so receive what is promised. HEBREWS 10:35–36

Be Ready for Jesus Christ's Return

See also: *The Timing of Jesus Christ's Return*, p. 134

As you do not know when Jesus Christ will come, keep watch and be ready

“So keep on watching, because you don’t know on what day your Lord is coming. ⁴³But be sure of this: if the owner of the house had known when during the night the thief would be coming, he would have stayed awake and not allowed his house to be broken into. ⁴⁴So you, too, must be ready, because at an hour you are not expecting him the Son of Man will come.” MATTHEW 24:42–44 ISV

Do not be deceived by false claims, for Christ’s return will be only after certain events – and obvious to all

Jesus answered them [his disciples], “Watch out that no one misleads you. ⁵For many will come in my name, saying, ‘I am the Christ,’ and they will mislead many. ⁶You will hear of wars and rumors of wars. Make sure that you are not alarmed, for this must happen, but the end is still to come. ⁷For nation will rise up in arms against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. And there will be famines and earthquakes in various places. ⁸All these things are the beginning of birth pains. ⁹“Then they will hand you over to be persecuted and will kill you. You will be hated by all the nations because of my name. ¹⁰Then many will be led into sin, and they will betray one another and hate one another. ¹¹And many false prophets will appear and deceive many, ¹²and because lawlessness will increase so much, the love of many will grow cold. ¹³But the person who endures to the end will be saved. ¹⁴And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached throughout the whole inhabited earth as a testimony to all the nations, and then the end will come. ... ²⁶So then, if someone says to you, ‘Look, he is in the wilderness,’ do not go out, or ‘Look, he is in the inner rooms,’ do not believe him. ²⁷For just like the lightning comes from the east and flashes to the west, so the coming of the Son of Man will be.

MATTHEW 24:4–14, 26–27

In v. 8 “birth pains” denotes the time of distress which leads into – or “gives birth” to – the reign of the Messiah, following his return.

II. Spiritual Warfare

Living as God wants means involvement in spiritual warfare. Believers are faced with challenges from spiritual adversaries and also from within themselves. Although the forces that oppose believers are formidable, the Bible gives clear instructions on how to counter any threat – through the supreme power of God.

The Existence of Spiritual Warfare

Believers have spiritual enemies, notably Satan

For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the powers, against the world rulers of this darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavens. [EPHESIANS 6:12](#)

Be sober and alert. *Your enemy the devil, like a roaring lion, is on the prowl looking for someone to devour.* [1 PETER 5:8](#)

The believer's struggle is primarily and ultimately against spiritual powers.

Believers also have human enemies

Be brave when you face your enemies. Your courage will show them that they are going to be destroyed, and it will show you that you will be saved. [PHILIPPIANS 1:28A CEV](#)

Believers have human enemies who are opposed to them in regard to spiritual matters – notably in seeking to prevent the spread of the gospel and/or in seeking to impose their own opposing beliefs.

Additionally, believers face internal spiritual conflict

[PETER:] Dear friends, I urge you as aliens and exiles to keep on abstaining from *the desires of the flesh that wage war against the soul.* [1 PETER 2:11 ISV](#)

But God and Jesus enable Christians to overcome

[PAUL:] What then shall we say about these things? *If God is for us, who can be against us? ...* ³⁷No, in all these things we have complete victory through him [Christ] who loved us! [ROMANS 8:31, 37](#)

Engaging in Spiritual Warfare

Believers are to engage in spiritual warfare both in standing firm in their faith and in advancing the cause of God's kingdom. Generally speaking, the former has a defensive sense and the latter an offensive sense.

Resist Satan

But *resist the devil and he will flee from you.* [JAMES 4:7B](#)

Use spiritual weapons and armor

For this reason, *take up the full armor of God so that you may be able to stand your ground on the evil day, and having done everything, to stand.* ¹⁴*Stand firm therefore, by fastening the belt of truth around your waist, by putting on the breastplate of righteousness,* ¹⁵*by fitting your feet with the preparation that comes from the good news of peace, ...* [EPHESIANS 6:13–15](#)

Verse 15 is most likely speaking of believers having a strong grasp of the truths of the gospel so as to be ready for action (cf. NASB, NCV, NKJV). Possibly a readiness to proclaim this gospel is in view.

Spiritual weapons and armor include: faith; . . .

At all times carry faith as a shield; for with it you will be able to put out all the burning arrows shot by the Evil One. [EPHESIANS 6:16](#) GNT

. . . God's word; . . .

And take the helmet of salvation and *the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.* [EPHESIANS 6:17](#)

The description of God's word as "the sword of the Spirit" reflects its: power; offensive and defensive roles; spiritual nature; and importance to the work of the Holy Spirit. Note that the "helmet of salvation" may well have in view the hope of salvation (cf. 1 Thessalonians 5:8).

. . . and prayer

Never stop praying, especially for others. Always pray by the power of the Spirit. Stay alert and keep praying for God's people. [EPHESIANS 6:18](#) CEV

Counteraction of Demons

Distinguishing between the Holy Spirit and demons

[JOHN:] Dear friends, stop believing every spirit. Instead, *test the spirits to see whether they are from God*, because many false prophets have gone out into the world. ²*This is how you can recognize God's Spirit: Every spirit who acknowledges that Jesus the Messiah has come in the flesh is from God.* ³*But every spirit who does not acknowledge Jesus is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist. ...* ⁶*We belong to God. The person who knows God listens to us. Whoever does not belong to God does not listen to us. This is how we know the Spirit of truth and the spirit of deceit.* 1 JOHN 4:1–3A, 6 ISV

John says that his readers could tell if the spirit influencing a prophet is the Holy Spirit or an evil one by whether or not the prophet acknowledged Jesus, in particular whether they acknowledged that he had come in the flesh. To do so would be indicative of the Holy Spirit's conviction. Presumably this test for recognizing the Holy Spirit can be applied to other truths about Jesus (cf. 1 Cor. 12:3). Additionally, one can infer from v. 6 that prophets or teachers who do not listen to the teachings of the apostles are not from God and are under the influence of evil spirits.

Demons are driven out of people in Jesus Christ's "name"

She [a girl with an evil spirit] continued to do this for many days. But Paul became greatly annoyed, and turned and *said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her!"* And it came out of her at once. ACTS 16:18

To do things in Jesus Christ's "name" involves acting: as his representative; by his authority; and in accordance with his will. It involves acting in reliance on his power, by faith in him.

The Holy Spirit and prayer also figure in driving out demons

[JESUS:] But if *I cast out demons by the Spirit of God*, then the kingdom of God has already overtaken you. MATTHEW 12:28

Then, after he [Jesus] went into the house, his disciples asked him privately, *"Why couldn't we cast it out?"* ²⁹*He told them, "This kind can come out only by prayer."* MARK 9:28–29

Ungodly Spiritualistic Practices

In conjunction with engaging in spiritual warfare, we are not to engage in any ungodly spiritualistic practices, which ultimately involve cooperative interaction with demons and even Satan.

Avoid witchcraft and occult practices . . .

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] *You must never sacrifice your sons or daughters by burning them alive, practice black magic, be a fortuneteller, witch, or sorcerer, ¹cast spells, ask ghosts or spirits for help, or consult the dead.* DEUTERONOMY 18:10–11 GW

. . . and do not consult anyone who performs such practices

Do not go for advice to people who consult the spirits of the dead. LEVITICUS 19:31A GNT

Do not have other “gods” or idols

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] “I, the LORD, am your God, who brought you from the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery. ³*You shall have no other gods before me.* ⁴*You shall not make for yourself a carved image or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above or that is on the earth beneath or that is in the water below.* ⁵*You shall not bow down to them or serve them, for I, the LORD, your God, am a jealous God, responding to the transgression of fathers by dealing with children to the third and fourth generations of those who reject me, ⁶and showing covenant faithfulness to a thousand generations of those who love me and keep my commandments.* EXODUS 20:2–6

Remember the persecuted

37. Rejecting Sin

I. Encountering Sin

Consequences of Sin for God's People.....	322
Addressing Sin (I): Return from Sin to God.....	323
Addressing Sin (II): Deal with Sin before God.....	323
God's Response to Repentance.....	324

II. Avoiding Sin and Being Holy

Avoiding Sin.....	325
Alternatives to Sin.....	326
Be Holy.....	327

I. Encountering Sin

Inevitably on occasions sin “leaks” into our lives, with its ill effects on ourselves and on our relationship with God. But if we address it as the Bible says to, God promises to forgive our sins and take in hand its effects.

Note that the teaching in this section is applicable to both new believers ridding themselves of their old ways and to believers returning to God after having lapsed into sin. However, the focus is more on the latter.

Consequences of Sin for God’s People

Sin deprives God’s people of his blessings

[GOD, TO UNFAITHFUL ISRAEL:] *Your misdeeds have stopped these things from coming. Your sins have deprived you of my bounty.* JEREMIAH 5:25

God may punish sin, which can mean physical suffering and emotional anguish

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *My whole body is sick because of your judgment; I am deprived of health because of my sin. ⁴For my sins overwhelm me; like a heavy load, they are too much for me to bear. ... ⁸I am numb with pain and severely battered; I groan loudly because of the anxiety I feel.* PSALMS 38:3–4, 8

Sin defiles God’s people – making them spiritually unclean

They [the sinful Israelites] were defiled by their deeds, and unfaithful in their actions. PSALMS 106:39

Jerusalem has sinned greatly, therefore she has become unclean. LAMENTATIONS 1:8A ISV

God turns away from those who persist in sin

Someday these sinners will cry to the LORD for help, but he will not answer them. He will hide his face from them at that time, because they have done such wicked deeds. MICAH 3:4

Addressing Sin (I): Return from Sin to God

Even if sin has not led to a believer completely falling away from God, all sin hinders one from being fully devoted to God to some extent. Thus one needs to turn away from any sin and return to being completely devoted to God.

Stop sinning

Sober up as you should, and *stop sinning!* 1 CORINTHIANS 15:34A

Return to God with all your heart

“Yet even now,” the LORD says, “*return to me with all your heart – with fasting, weeping, and mourning. Tear your hearts, not just your garments!*” ¹³*Return to the LORD your God, for he is merciful and compassionate, slow to anger and boundless in loyal love – often relenting from calamitous punishment.* JOEL 2:12–13

In returning from sin to God, do what God wants

[EZRA THE PRIEST, TO THE UNFAITHFUL PEOPLE:] Now then, confess your sins to the LORD, the God of your ancestors, and *do what pleases him.* EZRA 10:11 GNT

[HOSEA, TO ISRAEL:] *But you must return to your God, by maintaining love and justice, and by waiting for your God to return to you.* HOSEA 12:6

Addressing Sin (II): Deal with Sin before God

Confess your sin to God

As soon as you discover that you have committed any of these sins, *you must confess what you have done.* LEVITICUS 5:5 CEV

Be sorrowful over your sin

The sacrifice God wants is a broken spirit. God, you will not reject a heart that is broken and sorry for sin. PSALMS 51:17 NCV™

A “broken” spirit or heart is one that is deeply remorseful.

Humble yourself before God over your sin

The tax collector, however, stood far off and would not even look up to heaven, but beat his breast and said, ‘God, be merciful to me, sinner that I am!’ LUKE 18:13

Ask God for forgiveness and restoration

[DAVID, TO GOD AFTER COMMITTING TERRIBLE SIN:] *God, be merciful to me because you are loving. Because you are always ready to be merciful, wipe out all my wrongs. ²Wash away all my guilt and make me clean again. ... ⁷Take away my sin, and I will be clean. Wash me, and I will be whiter than snow. ⁸Make me hear sounds of joy and gladness; let the bones you crushed be happy again. ⁹Turn your face from my sins and wipe out all my guilt. ¹⁰Create in me a pure heart, God, and make my spirit right again. ¹¹Do not send me away from you or take your Holy Spirit away from me. ¹²Give me back the joy of your salvation. Keep me strong by giving me a willing spirit.* PSALMS 51:1–2, 7–12 NCV™

God’s Response to Repentance

God forgives our sins

[JOHN, TO BELIEVERS:] *But if we confess our sins, he is faithful and righteous, forgiving us our sins and cleansing us from all unrighteousness.* 1 JOHN 1:9

God restores our relationship with him

So tell the people [of Judah]: This is what the LORD All-Powerful says: *‘Return to me, and I will return to you,’ says the LORD All-Powerful.* ZECHARIAH 1:3 NCV™

[GOD:] *I will be their God and they will be my people. For they will wholeheartedly return to me.* JEREMIAH 24:7B

Here God in effect promises his unfaithful people that if they returned to him wholeheartedly, he would restore his relationship with them to what it should be. As such, they would again be his people and he would be their God.

II. Avoiding Sin and Being Holy

The Bible does not merely tell us not to sin. It also helps us not to do so by giving sound instructions and alternatives to sin. In conjunction with this, the Bible calls us to be holy – i.e. to live pure lives, set apart from all that is ungodly.

Avoiding Sin

Take care in avoiding sin

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Even if you think you can stand up to temptation, be careful not to fall.* 1 CORINTHIANS 10:12 CEV

Ask God for help to avoid sin, . . .

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Moreover, keep me from committing flagrant sins; do not allow such sins to control me.* Then I will be blameless, and innocent of blatant rebellion. PSALMS 19:13

. . . for God and Jesus Christ are willing and able to help us withstand temptation

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *No temptation has overtaken you that is unusual for human beings. But God is faithful, and he will not allow you to be tempted beyond your strength. Instead, along with the temptation he will also provide a way out, so that you may be able to endure it.* 1 CORINTHIANS 10:13 ISV

*For we do not have a high priest incapable of sympathizing with our weaknesses, but one [Christ] who has been tempted in every way just as we are, yet without sin.*¹⁶*Therefore let us confidently approach the throne of grace to receive mercy and find grace whenever we need help.* HEBREWS 4:15–16

Note that being tempted to sin is not sinning. But giving in to temptation is.

Use God's word to avoid sin

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *How can a young person maintain a pure life? By guarding it according to your instructions! ...*¹¹*In my heart I store up your words, so I might not sin against you.* PSALMS 119:9, 11

Avoid sinful desires

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] Dear friends, I urge you as aliens and exiles to *keep on abstaining from the desires of the flesh that wage war against the soul.* 1 PETER 2:11 ISV

Get rid of sinful influences

[JESUS, SPEAKING FIGURATIVELY:] *If your hand or your foot causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away.* It is better for you to enter life crippled or lame than to have two hands or two feet and be thrown into eternal fire. ⁹*And if your eye causes you to sin, tear it out and throw it away.* It is better for you to enter into life with one eye than to have two eyes and be thrown into fiery hell. MATTHEW 18:8-9

These instructions are not meant to be taken literally. They are hyperbole, emphasizing that one should do whatever is needed to get rid of sinful influences and avoid sin.

Hate evil and sin

[WISDOM PERSONIFIED:] To fear the LORD is to *hate evil. I hate pride, arrogance, evil behavior, and twisted speech.* PROVERBS 8:13 GW

Alternatives to Sin

Instead of living by the sinful nature, live by the Holy Spirit

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] He [God] condemned sin in the flesh ⁴so that the righteous requirement of the law might be fulfilled in us, who *do not live according to the flesh but according to the Spirit.* ⁵*For those who live according to the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the Spirit set their minds on the things of the Spirit.* ROMANS 8:3B-5 ISV

Our human nature (“the flesh”) is essentially sinful. But God has given his Holy Spirit to believers. As such, we are to live by God’s Holy Spirit. This involves: being both alert to and responsive to the Spirit’s promptings; and being reliant on his power, to enable and transform us. In conjunction with this, our minds should be focused on “things of the Spirit” (v. 5).

Instead of living as a slave to sin, live as a slave to righteousness and God

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Just as you once offered the parts of your body as slaves to impurity and to greater and greater disobedience, so now, in the same way, you must offer the parts of your body as slaves to righteousness that leads to sanctification. ...*²²But now that you have been freed from sin and have become God's slaves, the benefit you reap is sanctification, and the result is eternal life. [ROMANS 6:19B, 22 ISV](#)

One of the most effective preventative measures against sinning is to be preoccupied with doing good – as is the case when one lives as a slave to righteousness and God.

Be Holy

To be holy involves being separated from corruptive influences and totally dedicated to God. As such it includes moral purity and obedience to God. The ongoing process of becoming increasingly holy is largely facilitated by God, but in accordance believers are called upon to be holy. (See also the introductory comment on [God Makes His People Holy](#), p. 161.)

Be holy as God is holy

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] As obedient children, do not be shaped by the desires that you once had in your ignorance. ¹⁵Instead, *just as the one who called you is holy, be holy in every aspect of your life.* ¹⁶For it is written, “You must be holy, because I am holy.” [1 PETER 1:14–16 ISV](#)

If we are to be God's people, acceptable to him, we need to be holy because: God is holy and so does not accept anything that is not holy. Therefore we should aspire to be holy, like God.

Be set apart for God

[GOD, TO THE ISRAELITES:] Therefore *separate yourselves and be holy, because I am the LORD your God.* [LEVITICUS 20:7 ISV](#)

The lambs were eaten by the Israelites who had returned from exile and by *all who had separated themselves from the unclean practices of the non-Jews in the land to worship the LORD God of Israel.* [EZRA 6:21 GW](#)

Do not conform to this world . . .

Do not be conformed to this present world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, so that you may test and approve what is the will of God – what is good and well-pleasing and perfect.

ROMANS 12:2

In the NT the “world” often refers to the system of values, attitudes and behavior commonplace in society – along with the people and social structures that conform to this system. This system is largely antagonistic towards or dismissive of God. As such, the “world” is essentially evil, and so it is imperative that believers do not conform to it.

. . . So do not live as other people do

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] So I tell you and encourage you in the Lord’s name *not to live any longer like other people in the world. Their minds are set on worthless things.* EPHESIANS 4:17 GW

Avoid bad company

[DAVID:] *I do not keep company with worthless people; I have nothing to do with hypocrites. ⁵I hate the company of the evil and avoid the wicked.* PSALMS 26:4–5 GNT

Remember the persecuted

38. Major Pitfalls

I. Pride

Pride in Thought.....	330
Pride in Action.....	331
Outcomes of Pride.....	331
Antithesis of Pride: Humility.....	332

II. Riches and Sex

Riches and Godliness.....	333
Further Warnings about Riches.....	334
Sexual Sin.....	334
Prohibited Forms of Sex.....	335
Epilogue: Be Wary.....	336

I. Pride

Pride is one of the greatest dangers to one's life as a believer, yet it is also one of the most subtle. Pride has an adverse effect on both our relationship with God and our relationships with others. The opposite to pride is humility, which correspondingly is very much a key factor in living an ongoing and effective Christian life.

Pride in Thought

Do not be proud

Hear and give ear; *be not proud*, for the LORD has spoken.

JEREMIAH 13:15 ESV

Do not think you are better than others

He [the king] should not think he is better than his fellow Israelites, and he must not stop obeying the law in any way so that he and his descendants may rule the kingdom for a long time.

DEUTERONOMY 17:20 NCV™

Do not be wise in your own eyes

How horrible it will be for those who think they are wise and consider themselves to be clever. ISAIAH 5:21 GW

Do not be self-righteous

Jesus also told this parable to some who were confident that they were righteous and looked down on everyone else. ^{10a}Two men went up to the temple to pray, one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. ¹¹*The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself like this: 'God, I thank you that I am not like other people: extortionists, unrighteous people, adulterers – or even like this tax collector.* ¹²*I fast twice a week; I give a tenth of everything I get.'* ¹³The tax collector, however, stood far off and would not even look up to heaven, but beat his breast and said, 'God, be merciful to me, sinner that I am!' ¹⁴*I tell you that this man went down to his home justified rather than the Pharisee. For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but he who humbles himself will be exalted.'* LUKE 18:9–14

Pride in Action

Do not exalt yourself . . .

Do not exalt yourself in the presence of the king, And do not stand in the place of the great; ... PROVERBS 25:6 NKJV

The second part seems to speak of claiming a place among the great.

. . . Honor others, rather than yourself

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Love each other as brothers and sisters and honor others more than you do yourself. ROMANS 12:10 CEV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Instead of being motivated by selfish ambition or vanity, each of you should, in humility, be moved to *treat one another as more important than yourself.* PHILIPPIANS 2:3

Do not boast about yourself

Let another praise you, and not your own mouth; someone else, and not your own lips. PROVERBS 27:2

Outcomes of Pride

Pride is very detrimental to a relationship with God

[MOSES, TO THE ISRAELITES:] ... *make sure that you do not become proud and forget the LORD your God who rescued you from Egypt, where you were slaves.* DEUTERONOMY 8:14 GNT

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *The wicked are too proud to turn to you or even think about you.* PSALMS 10:4 CEV

In their pride, the wicked have no desire and see no need to seek God, often due to a perceived self-sufficiency. Being “full of themselves” they have no room for God in their lives.

Pride is associated with self-deception and flawed understanding

[GOD, TO THE NATION OF EDMON:] *Your pride has deceived you. Your capital is a fortress of solid rock; your home is high in the mountains, and so you say to yourself, ‘Who can ever pull me down?’⁴Even though you make your home as high as an eagle’s nest,*

so that it seems to be among the stars, yet I will pull you down.

OBADIAH 1:3–4 GNT

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF A TYPICAL FALSE TEACHER:] *This person is full of pride and understands nothing, but is sick with a love for arguing and fighting about words.* 1 TIMOTHY 6:4A NCV™

Pride leads to one’s downfall

Before destruction the heart of a person is proud, but humility comes before honor. PROVERBS 18:12

Antithesis of Pride: Humility

Humility is the opposite of pride. It is a most critical attitude for maintaining one’s guard against things that can cause one to fall – spiritually and otherwise. This is in contrast to pride which opens oneself up to many kinds of destructive dangers (as reflected in the previous section, *Outcomes of Pride*).

Be humble – particularly before God

This is what the LORD requires from you: to do what is right, to love mercy, and to *live humbly with your God.* MICAH 6:8B GW

Then he [an angelic messenger] said to me, “Don’t be afraid, Daniel, for from the very first day you applied your mind to understand and to *humble yourself before your God*, your words were heard. I have come in response to your words.” DANIEL 10:12

Be humble towards others

Be humble and gentle in every way. EPHESIANS 4:2A GW

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] *And all of you, clothe yourselves with humility toward one another, because God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.* 1 PETER 5:5B

II. Riches and Sex

Riches and sex are both good in themselves; in fact they are blessings from God. However they both are easily and often misused, bringing ill effects for both ourselves and others. Indeed, few things have the capacity of riches or sex for both good and harm. So it should be no surprise that they feature so prominently in the Bible's teaching on our relationships with others and moreover our relationship with God.

Riches and Godliness

Riches are a barrier to a relationship with God

Do not accumulate for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal. ²⁰But accumulate for yourselves treasures in heaven, where moth and rust do not destroy, and thieves do not break in and steal. ²¹For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. ... ²⁴No one can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money. [MATTHEW 6:19–21, 24](#)

Then Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, *“How hard it is for the rich to enter the kingdom of God!* [MARK 10:23](#)

Riches even draw one away from God

But people who want to get rich keep toppling into temptation and are trapped by many stupid and harmful desires that plunge them into destruction and ruin. ¹⁰For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. Some people, in their eagerness to get rich, have wandered away from the faith and pierced themselves with much pain.

[1 TIMOTHY 6:9–10](#) ISV

So, do not love money and be content with what you have

Keep your lives free from the love of money, and be content with what you have, for God has said, “I will never leave you or abandon you.”

[HEBREWS 13:5](#) ISV

Further Warnings about Riches

Riches are not secure

[PAUL, INSTRUCTING TIMOTHY WHAT TO TEACH BELIEVERS:] Tell those who have the riches of this world not to be arrogant and *not to place their confidence in anything as uncertain as riches*. Instead, they should place their confidence in God who richly provides us with everything to enjoy. 1 TIMOTHY 6:17 GW

Life does not last and the dead cannot take their riches with them

Surely one sees that even wise people die; fools and spiritually insensitive people all pass away and leave their wealth to others.

PSALMS 49:10

For we *did not bring anything into the world, and surely we cannot take anything out of it.* 1 TIMOTHY 6:7 ISV

Hoarding riches will bring ill consequences in the afterlife

[JESUS:] But *woe to you who are rich, for you have received your comfort already.* ²⁵“*Woe to you who are well satisfied with food now, for you will be hungry.*” LUKE 6:24–25A

Sexual Sin

Avoid sexual sin

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] But *among you there must not be either sexual immorality, impurity of any kind, or greed, as these are not fitting for the saints.* EPHESIANS 5:3

The experts in the law and the Pharisees *brought a woman who had been caught committing adultery.* They made her stand in front of them ⁴and said to Jesus, “Teacher, *this woman was caught in the very act of adultery.* ... ⁷When they persisted in asking him, he stood up straight and replied, “Whoever among you is guiltless may be the first to throw a stone at her.” ⁸Then he bent over again and wrote on the ground. ⁹Now when they heard this, they began to drift away one at a time, starting with the older ones, until Jesus was left alone with the woman standing before him. ¹⁰Jesus stood

up straight and said to her, “Woman, where are they? Did no one condemn you?” “She replied, “No one, Lord.” And Jesus said, “I do not condemn you either. *Go, and from now on do not sin any more.*”

JOHN 8:3–4, 7–11

Sexual sin has ill consequences . . .

Keep on running away from sexual immorality. *Any other sin that a person commits is outside his body, but the person who sins sexually sins against his own body.* 1 CORINTHIANS 6:18 ISV

In contrast to other sins, sexual sin involves the misuse and mistreatment of one’s own body. Moreover, Paul seems to imply that sexual sin adversely affects the body or one’s being in a deeper way than any other sin (cf. CEV, GNT, NLT).

. . . Sexual sin ultimately results in God’s judgment

Marriage must be honored among all and the marriage bed kept undefiled, for *God will judge sexually immoral people and adulterers.*

HEBREWS 13:4

Prohibited Forms of Sex

See also: *Do not rape*, p. 278; *Do not commit adultery*, p. 297

Lust

[JESUS:] You have heard that it was said, ‘You must not commit adultery.’²⁸ *But I say to you, anyone who stares at a woman with lust for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.*

MATTHEW 5:27–28 ISV

Gazing longingly at a woman with sexual desire, is committing adultery in one’s heart and in a spiritual sense.

Sex apart from marriage

[MOSES, SPEAKING OF ANY WOMAN WHO HAD HAD PREMARITAL SEX:] *She has done a disgraceful thing in Israel by having sexual relations before she was married. You must get rid of the evil among you.*

DEUTERONOMY 22:21B NCV™

Prostitution

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] *Surely you know that your bodies are parts of Christ himself. So I must never take the parts of Christ and join them to a prostitute!* 1 CORINTHIANS 6:15 NCV™

Homosexual acts

[PAUL, SPEAKING OF UNGODLY PEOPLE:] For this reason God gave them over to dishonorable passions. For *their women exchanged the natural sexual relations for unnatural ones,*²⁷*and likewise the men also abandoned natural relations with women and were inflamed in their passions for one another. Men committed shameless acts with men and received in themselves the due penalty for their error.*

ROMANS 1:26–27

This teaches that homosexual relations are unnatural. In v. 27, the phrase “received in themselves the due penalty” implies that the committing of such acts carries its own natural consequences.

Epilogue: Be Wary

Be alert and sober

So then we must not sleep as the rest, but must *stay alert and sober.*

1 THESSALONIANS 5:6

Examine and evaluate yourself

Let us test and examine our ways, and return to the LORD!

LAMENTATIONS 3:40 ESV

Keep a clear conscience

Paul looked straight at the Council and said, “Brothers, *with a clear conscience I have done my duty before God up to this very day.*”

ACTS 23:1 ISV

39. Hard Times

I. General

Prologue: God's People Still Have Hard Times.....	338
Mourn Loss.....	339
Keep in Mind God and His Word.....	339
Trust in God.....	340
Hope in God and Wait for Him.....	341

II. Praying in Hard Times

Tell God about Your Problems.....	342
Ask God for Help.....	343
Praise and Rejoice in God.....	343
Epilogue: God Does Respond to Suffering.....	344

I. General

Hard times are experienced by all Christians. This reality is reflected in the Bible, notably in Job and Psalms. But the Bible also shows that there are a number of practical and effective things that we can do when undergoing hard times.

Note that the following chapter looks at experiencing persecution because of one's faith. This current chapter deals with undergoing hard times in general – particularly when one is hurting or “down” – irrespective of whether such times are a result of one's faith or not. As such the responses discussed in this chapter, supplement or reinforce the responses to persecution that are given in the following chapter.

Prologue: God's People Still Have Hard Times

See also: *God Disciplines His People*, p. 162; *I. The Persecution of God's People*, p. 346

Trouble is characteristic of human life

[ELIPHAZ:] *But a person is born for trouble as surely as sparks fly up from a fire.* JOB 5:7 GW

Examples of God's people undergoing hard times . . .

Elijah was afraid, so he got up and fled for his life to Beer Sheba in Judah. He left his servant there, ⁴while he went a day's journey into the desert. He went and sat down under a shrub and asked the LORD to take his life: "I've had enough! Now, O LORD, take my life. After all, I'm no better than my ancestors." 1 KINGS 19:3-4

[JOB:] *I have no ease, I have no quietness; I cannot rest; turmoil has come upon me.* JOB 3:26

. . . and an example of hard times even being attributed to God

[NAOMI:] *Call me Mara, because God has made my life bitter. ²¹I had everything when I left, but the LORD has brought me back with nothing. How can you still call me Naomi, when God has turned against me and made my life so hard?* RUTH 1:20B-21 CEV

Mourn Loss

Mourn and weep over loss – particularly deaths

Now when Mary came to the place where Jesus was and saw him, she fell at his feet and said to him, “Lord, if you had been here, *my brother would not have died.*”³³When Jesus saw her weeping, and the people who had come with her weeping, he was intensely moved in spirit and greatly distressed.³⁴He asked, “Where have you laid him?” They replied, “Lord, come and see.”³⁵*Jesus wept.* JOHN 11:32–35
Some devout men buried Stephen, mourning for him with loud cries.

ACTS 8:2 GNT

Mourn before God

The men of Ai killed about thirty–six of them [Israelites] and chased them from in front of the city gate all the way to the fissures and defeated them on the steep slope. The people’s courage melted away like water.⁶*Joshua tore his clothes; he and the leaders of Israel lay face down on the ground before the ark of the LORD until evening and threw dirt on their heads.* JOSHUA 7:5–6

The actions of Joshua and the leaders (v. 6) signified mourning. Particularly as the ark signified God’s presence amongst the Israelites, this is an example of people mourning before God.

Keep in Mind God and His Word

In hard times, remember God

[NEHEMIAH, SPEAKING TO HIS PEOPLE ABOUT ENEMY THREATS:] “*Don’t be afraid of them. Remember the great and awesome Lord, and fight on behalf of your brothers, your sons, your daughters, your wives, and your families!*” NEHEMIAH 4:14B

Keep meditating on God’s word and obeying it

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] Though rulers plot and slander me, *your servant meditates on your statutes.* ...⁵¹Arrogant people do nothing but scoff at me. *Yet I do not turn aside from your law.* ...¹⁶⁶I hope for your deliverance, O LORD, and *I obey your commands.* PSALMS 119:23, 51, 166

Take comfort in God's word

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] *This is my comfort in my affliction, that your promise gives me life. ...* ⁵²*When I think of your rules from of old, I take comfort, O LORD.* PSALMS 119:50, 52 ESV

In v. 50 the psalmist says that his comfort in suffering is God's promise which preserves or "revives" (NET) his life, through the hope that it gives.

Trust in God

See also: [In persecution:] *Have Faith in God and Pray*, 350

Trust in God

[DAVID, TO GOD:] It is like terror all around me, as they conspire together and plot to take my life. ¹⁴*But I trust in you, O LORD. I say, "You are my God."* ¹⁵*My times are in your hands.* Deliver me from the hands of my enemies and from those who pursue me. PSALMS 31:13B–15 ISV

The statement: "You are my God" (v. 14), implies that the LORD is the one David trusts in as sovereign over his life, the one who held his present and future circumstances in his hands (v. 15a).

Take refuge in God, for God saves and protects those who do

The one who lives in the shelter of the Most High and who abides in the shadow of the Almighty ²*will say to the LORD, "You are my refuge, my fortress, and my God in whom I trust!"* ³*He will surely deliver you from the hunter's snare and from the destructive plague.* ⁴*With his feathers he will cover you, and under his wings you will find safety. His truth is your shield and armor.* ⁵*You need not fear terror that stalks in the night, the arrow that flies in the day;* ⁶*plague that strikes in the darkness, or calamity that destroys at noon.* ⁷*If a thousand fall at your side or ten thousand at your right hand, it will not overcome you. ...* ⁹*"O LORD, you are my refuge!"* *Because you chose the Most High as your dwelling place,* ¹⁰*no evil will fall upon you, and no affliction will approach your tent,* ¹¹*for he will command his angels to protect you in all your ways.* ¹²*With their hands they will lift you up so you will not trip over a stone.* PSALMS 91:1–7, 9–12 ISV

Hope in God and Wait for Him

Put your hope in God . . .

[A PSALMIST:] *Why are you cast down, O my soul, and why are you in turmoil within me? Hope in God; for I shall again praise him, my salvation⁶ and my God.* PSALMS 42:5–6A ESV

[JEREMIAH:] Remember my affliction and my wanderings, the wormwood and the gall! ²⁰My soul continually remembers it and is bowed down within me. ²¹But this I call to mind, and therefore I have hope: ²²The steadfast love of the LORD never ceases; his mercies never come to an end; ²³they are new every morning; great is your faithfulness. LAMENTATIONS 3:19–23 ESV

. . . Look resolutely and expectantly to God

[DAVID:] *I continually look to the LORD for help, for he will free my feet from the enemy's net.* PSALMS 25:15

[JEHOSHAPHAT, AS JUDAH FACED INVASION:] O our God, will you not execute judgment on them? For we are powerless against this great horde that is coming against us. *We do not know what to do, but our eyes are on you.* 2 CHRONICLES 20:12 ESV

Wait for God, with confidence that he will act

[DAVID:] *I believe that I shall look upon the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living!* ¹⁴Wait for the LORD; be strong, and let your heart take courage; wait for the LORD! PSALMS 27:13–14 ESV

Note that God's action on behalf of his troubled people is not always simply the removal of the cause of their trouble. It may instead involve strengthening his people to cope with the trouble, with inner joy and peace.

Wait quietly and patiently

Be still before the LORD and wait patiently for him; fret not yourself over the one who prospers in his way, over the man who carries out evil devices! PSALMS 37:7 ESV

II. Praying in Hard Times

Prayer is probably the most prominent positive response to hard times. The Bible shows us a great deal about praying to God in such times. The psalms in particular contain a number of prayers of people faced with great difficulties and suffering, from which we can learn much.

Tell God about Your Problems

When facing trouble, pray to God

[GOD:] *Pray to me when you are in trouble!* I will deliver you, and you will honor me! [PSALMS 50:15](#)

Is anyone among you suffering? He should pray. Is anyone in good spirits? He should sing praises. [JAMES 5:13](#)

Tell God of your plight and how you feel

[DAVID, TO GOD:] Do not remain far away from me, for *trouble is near and I have no one to help me. ...* ¹⁴*My strength drains away like water; all my bones are dislocated; my heart is like wax; it melts away inside me.* [PSALMS 22:11, 14](#)

[DAVID, TO GOD:] Turn to me and have mercy on me, because *I am lonely and hurting.* ¹⁷*My troubles have grown larger; free me from my problems.* ¹⁸*Look at my suffering and troubles, and take away all my sins.* ¹⁹*Look at how many enemies I have! See how much they hate me!* [PSALMS 25:16–19](#) NCV™

Pour out your heart to God

Trust in him at all times, you people! *Pour out your hearts before him!* God is our shelter! (Selah) [PSALMS 62:8](#)

[HANNAH:] *I have poured out my soul to the LORD.* ¹⁶*... I have spoken from my deep pain and anguish.* [1 SAMUEL 1:15B, 16B](#)

To pour out your heart to God involves telling God about all your concerns and feelings. In a sense it is to empty your heart of all its troubles, laying them out before God.

Ask God for Help

See also: *Making Requests*, p. 217; and *Have Faith in God and Pray*, p. 350

Cry out to God for help

[DAVID:] In my distress I called to the LORD; *I cried out to my God*. From his heavenly temple he heard my voice; *he listened to my cry for help*. PSALMS 18:6

In particular, ask God for strength . . .

[A PSALMIST, TO GOD:] My soul melts away for sorrow; *strengthen me according to your word!* PSALMS 119:28 ESV

. . . and ask God to guide you

[DAVID, TO GOD:] May I hear about your loyal love in the morning, for I trust in you. *Show me the way I should go*, because I long for you. PSALMS 143:8

Also ask God for deliverance

[DAVID:] O God, because of your great loyal love, *answer me with your faithful deliverance!* ¹⁴*Rescue me from the mud! Don't let me sink! Deliver me from those who hate me, from the deep water!* PSALMS 69:13B–14

Persist in prayer to God

LORD, you are the God who saves me. *I cry out to you day and night*. PSALMS 88:1 NCV™

Praise and Rejoice in God

Praise and thank God amidst trouble

He [Jehoshaphat] met with the people and *appointed musicians to play before the LORD and praise his majestic splendor*. As they marched ahead of the warriors they said: “Give thanks to the LORD, for his loyal love endures.” ²²*When they began to shout and praise*, the LORD suddenly attacked the Ammonites, Moabites, and men

from Mount Seir who were invading Judah, and they were defeated.

2 CHRONICLES 20:21–22

[JOB, RESPONDING TO HORRIFIC LOSS:] *The LORD gave, and the LORD has taken away; blessed be the name of the LORD.*” JOB 1:21B ESV

Rejoice in God amidst trouble

[HABAKKUK:] Even though the fig tree does not blossom, and there are no grapes on the vines; even if the olive harvest fails, and the fields produce nothing edible; even if the flock is snatched from the sheepfold, and there is no herd in the stalls—¹⁸*as for me, I will rejoice in the LORD. I will find my joy in the God of my deliverance.*

HABAKKUK 3:17–18 ISV

Epilogue: God Does Respond to Suffering

God is near us in hard times

The LORD is close to the brokenhearted, and he saves those whose spirits have been crushed. PSALMS 34:18 NCV™

God comforts his people in hard times

[DAVID, TO GOD:] *Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil, for you are with me; your rod and your staff, they comfort me.* PSALMS 23:4 ESV

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] Blessed is the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, *the Father of mercies and God of all comfort,* ⁴*who comforts us in all our troubles* so that we may be able to comfort those experiencing any trouble with *the comfort with which we ourselves are comforted by God.* 2 CORINTHIANS 1:3–4

Testimony to God answering prayers in suffering and trouble

[DAVID:] *I sought the LORD’s help and he answered me; he delivered me from all my fears. ...*⁶*This oppressed man cried out and the LORD heard; he saved him from all his troubles.* PSALMS 34:4, 6

40. Persecution

I. The Persecution of God's People

The Reality of Persecution	346
The Antichrist and the Final Persecution.....	347
God's Care of Persecuted Believers.....	348

II. What to Do in Persecution

Be Faithful to God and Endure.....	349
Have Faith in God and Pray.....	350
Rejoice.....	351
Blessings for Faithfulness in Persecution	352

I. The Persecution of God's People

The Bible warns that faithfully following God inevitably results in persecution and difficulties. In fact in a number of countries today severe persecution of Christians is common. Additionally, the Bible speaks of a time just prior to Jesus Christ's return when persecution will be severe worldwide. But along with such warnings, the Bible gives wonderful and powerful promises of God's care for his people in the face of persecution.

The Reality of Persecution

Following God and Jesus Christ results in persecution . . .

Now in fact all who want to live godly lives in Christ Jesus will be persecuted. ² [TIMOTHY 3:12](#)

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *People will put you out of their synagogues. Yes, the time is coming when those who kill you will think they are offering service to God.* ³*They will do this because they have not known the Father and they have not known me.* ⁴*I have told you these things now so that when the time comes you will remember that I warned you.* [JOHN 16:2-4A](#) NCV™

. . . As such, it brings all kinds of hardships and suffering

"We must endure many hardships to get into the kingdom of God."
[ACTS 14:22B](#) ISV

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] This brings you great joy, although you may have to suffer for a short time in various trials. ¹ [PETER 1:6](#)

Similarly, spreading the gospel can result in suffering

[PAUL:] *For this gospel I was appointed a preacher and apostle and teacher.* ¹²*Because of this, in fact, I suffer as I do.* ² [TIMOTHY 1:11-12A](#)

God's people are in fact hated

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *If the world hates you, remember that it hated me first.* ¹⁹*If you belonged to the world, it would love you as it loves its own. But I have chosen you out of the world, so you don't belong to it. That is why the world hates you.* [JOHN 15:18-19](#) NCV™

The Antichrist and the Final Persecution

The Bible speaks of a figure of the end times that is opposed to God and Jesus Christ, and persecutes their people – a final “antichrist”. The first “beast” in Revelation is correlated by many with such a figure. However others consider it and the second beast that supports it to represent evil world systems rather than individual persons.

The antichrist will have great authority and be worshiped

He [the beast] was given ruling authority over every tribe, people, language, and nation,⁸ and all those who live on the earth will worship the beast, everyone whose name has not been written since the foundation of the world in the book of life belonging to the Lamb who was killed. [REVELATION 13:7B-8](#)

This is speaking of the first “beast” of Revelation.

Persecution of God’s people will increase in the end times – especially due to the antichrist

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *Then they will hand you over to be persecuted and will kill you. You will be hated by all the nations because of my name.* [MATTHEW 24:9](#)

The beast was permitted to go to war against the saints and conquer them. [REVELATION 13:7A](#)

“Three and a half years” is given for the rule of the antichrist and intense persecution

He will speak against the Supreme God and oppress God’s people. He will try to change their religious laws and festivals, and God’s people will be under his power for three and a half years. [DANIEL 7:25 GNT](#)

In regard to the duration of the antichrist’s rule and the future period of intense persecution of believers, the Bible speaks of periods of time which are equivalent to three and a half years. Whether or not this is literal, such specifications are indicative of the period being predetermined by God. The period will end on Jesus Christ’s return, when the two beasts will be thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning sulfur (cf. Revelation 19:19–20).

God's Care of Persecuted Believers

God strengthens his people amidst trials

[PAUL, TO TIMOTHY:] Instead, *take your part in suffering for the Good News, as God gives you the strength to do it.* 2 TIMOTHY 1:8B GNT

[CHRIST, TO PAUL:] *“My grace is enough for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness.”* [PAUL:] *So then, I will boast most gladly about my weaknesses, so that the power of Christ may reside in me. ¹⁰Therefore I am content with weaknesses, with insults, with troubles, with persecutions and difficulties for the sake of Christ, for whenever I am weak, then I am strong.* 2 CORINTHIANS 12:9B–10

In weakness, hardship and/or persecution (v. 10a), Christ's power was perfected in Paul (v. 9). As such Paul could then say: “I am strong” (v. 10b).

God rescues his people from trials

[GOD, TO JEREMIAH:] I will make you as strong as a wall to these people, a fortified wall of bronze. *They will attack you, but they will not be able to overcome you. For I will be with you to rescue you and deliver you,” says the LORD.* ²¹*“I will deliver you from the power of the wicked. I will free you from the clutches of violent people.”* JEREMIAH 15:20–21

[PAUL:] *I endured these persecutions and the Lord delivered me from them all.* 2 TIMOTHY 3:11B

God will ultimately save believers from the persecution of the end times

[DANIEL, DESCRIBING A VISION:] While I was watching, *that horn began to wage war against the holy ones and was defeating them,* ²²*until the Ancient of Days arrived and judgment was rendered in favor of the holy ones of the Most High. Then the time came for the holy ones to take possession of the kingdom.* DANIEL 7:21–22

The “horn” is understood by many to represent the antichrist.

II. What to Do in Persecution

The Bible provides practical teaching on what to do when faced with persecution. Moreover, the Bible even provides good reasons to rejoice in spite of the suffering often involved in persecution. Not least of these reasons are the blessings that we can experience amidst such hardship – and those that we will receive in the future for enduring it.

Be Faithful to God and Endure

Remain faithful to God and Jesus Christ

[JESUS CHRIST, TO THE CHURCH IN PERGAMUM:] Do not be afraid of the things you are about to suffer. The devil is about to have some of you thrown into prison so you may be tested, and you will experience suffering for ten days. *Remain faithful even to the point of death*, and I will give you the crown that is life itself. ... ¹³I know where you live – where Satan’s throne is. *Yet you continue to cling to my name and you have not denied your faith in me, even in the days of Antipas, my faithful witness, who was killed in your city where Satan lives.* [REVELATION 2:10, 13](#)

The clause “where Satan’s throne is” (v. 13a) apparently refers to the city of Pergamum as a center of pagan worship, no doubt a hostile place to Christians. Note Antipas’s example (v. 13b) of being faithful “even to the point of death” (v. 10b).

Endure persecution

[JOHN:] If anyone is meant for captivity, into captivity he will go. If anyone is to be killed by the sword, then by the sword he must be killed. *This requires steadfast endurance* and faith from the saints. [REVELATION 13:10](#)

Consider and follow Jesus Christ’s example in suffering . . .

Let us keep our eyes fixed on Jesus, on whom our faith depends from beginning to end. He did not give up because of the cross! On the contrary, because of the joy that was waiting for him, he thought nothing of the disgrace of dying on the cross, and he is now seated at

the right-hand side of God's throne. ³*Think of what he went through; how he put up with so much hatred from sinners! So do not let yourselves become discouraged and give up.* [HEBREWS 12:2–3 GNT](#)

... and share in Jesus Christ's sufferings

[PETER, TO BELIEVERS:] But be happy that *you are sharing in Christ's sufferings* so that you will be happy and full of joy when Christ comes again in glory. [1 PETER 4:13 NCV™](#)

It was necessary for Christ to suffer in order to achieve God's objectives for him. Likewise those who are "in" him, must also be prepared to suffer in order to advance his cause. Quite possibly the NT writers had such a concept in mind when they wrote of sharing in Christ's sufferings.

Have Faith in God and Pray

Have faith and hope in God

[PAUL:] For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, of the affliction we experienced in Asia. For we were so utterly burdened beyond our strength that we despaired of life itself. ⁹Indeed, we felt that we had received the sentence of death. But *that was to make us rely not on ourselves but on God who raises the dead.* ¹⁰He delivered us from such a deadly peril, and he will deliver us. *On him we have set our hope that he will deliver us again.* [2 CORINTHIANS 1:8–11 ESV](#)

Do not be afraid

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] *Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul.* Instead, fear the one who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell. ²⁹*Aren't two sparrows sold for a penny? Yet not one of them falls to the ground apart from your Father's will.* ³⁰*Even all the hairs on your head are numbered.* ³¹*So do not be afraid; you are more valuable than many sparrows.* [MATTHEW 10:28–31](#)

Do not worry about what to say – you will be given what to say

[JESUS, TO HIS DISCIPLES:] You will be brought before governors and kings because of me, to testify to them and to the gentiles. ¹⁹When they hand you over, *don't worry about how you are to speak or what*

you are to say, because in that hour what you are to say will be given to you. ²⁰*It won't be you speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you.* [MATTHEW 10:18–20](#) ISV

Pray to God, asking for help

[THE EARLY BELIEVERS:] *And now, Lord, pay attention to their threats, and grant to your servants to speak your message with great courage,* ³⁰*while you extend your hand to heal, and to bring about miraculous signs and wonders through the name of your holy servant Jesus.* [ACTS 4:29–30](#)

Note that the believers' prayer was for God to work through them amidst persecution, rather than simply for God to stop the persecution.

Bless and pray for those who persecute you

Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, ²⁸*bless those who curse you, pray for those who mistreat you.* [LUKE 6:27–28](#)

Rejoice

Rejoice because trials develop Christian character and virtues

[PAUL:] *Not only this, but we also rejoice in sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance,* ⁴*and endurance, character, and character, hope.* [ROMANS 5:3–4](#)

My brothers and sisters, consider it nothing but joy when you fall into all sorts of trials, ³*because you know that the testing of your faith produces endurance.* ⁴*And let endurance have its perfect effect, so that you will be perfect and complete, not deficient in anything.*

[JAMES 1:2–4](#)

Rejoice because of rewards for enduring persecution

Blessed are you when people hate you, and when they exclude you and insult you and reject you as evil on account of the Son of Man! ²³*Rejoice in that day, and jump for joy, because your reward is great in heaven.* For their ancestors did the same things to the prophets.

[LUKE 6:22–23](#)

Blessings for Faithfulness in Persecution

Blessings amidst suffering

Praise be to the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. God is the Father who is full of mercy and all comfort. ⁴*He comforts us every time we have trouble, so when others have trouble, we can comfort them with the same comfort God gives us.* ⁵*We share in the many sufferings of Christ. In the same way, much comfort comes to us through Christ.* 2 CORINTHIANS 1:3–5 NCV™

Throughout our lives we are always in danger of death for Jesus' sake, in order that his life may be seen in this mortal body of ours.

2 CORINTHIANS 4:11 GNT

Jesus' "life" refers to his resurrection life – with its spiritual power for those who share in his suffering, suffering on his behalf.

God's kingdom

Blessed are those who are persecuted for righteousness, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to them. MATTHEW 5:10

Note that this teaching probably has a present application as well as a future one.

Eternal life

Happy are those who remain faithful under trials, because when they succeed in passing such a test, they will receive as their reward the life which God has promised to those who love him. JAMES 1:12 GNT

Future glory

[PAUL, TO BELIEVERS:] And if [we are] children, then heirs (namely, heirs of God and also fellow heirs with Christ) – *if indeed we suffer with him so we may also be glorified with him.* ¹⁸*For I consider that our present sufferings cannot even be compared to the glory that will be revealed to us.* ROMANS 8:17–18

Bibliography

Commentaries

New Bible Commentary, 21st Century Edition, D A Carson, R T France, J A Motyer, G J Wenham, (Consulting Editors), Inter-Varsity Press, Leicester, England, 1994.

Zondervan NIV Bible Commentary, Kenneth L. Barker & John R. Kohlenberger III (Consulting Editors), Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, USA, 1994.

Believer's Bible Commentary, William MacDonald, Thomas Nelson Publishers, Nashville, Tennessee, USA, 1995.

The KJV Bible Commentary, Edward E. Hinson and Michael Kroll Woodrow (General Editors), Thomas Nelson Publishers, Nashville, Tennessee, USA, 1997.

Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Bible, Matthew Henry, Hendrickson Publishers, Peabody, MA, 1997.

New International Bible Commentary, F. F. Bruce (General Editor, revised edition), Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, 1986.

The Bible Knowledge Commentary, Walvoord, John F., and Zuck, Roy B., Scripture Press Publications, Inc., Wheaton, Illinois, 1983, 1985.

The Wycliffe Bible Commentary, Everett F. Harrison, (Chicago: Moody Press) 1962.

Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

The Illustrated Bible Dictionary, J D Douglas (Organising Editor), Inter-Varsity Press, Leicester, England, 1980.

New Dictionary Of Theology, S B Ferguson, D F Wright & J I Packer (Editors), Inter-Varsity Press, Leicester, England & Downers Grove, Illinois, USA, 1988.

The New International Dictionary Of The Bible, J. D. Douglas (Revising Editor), Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, 1987.

New International Encyclopedia Of Bible Words, Lawrence O. Richards, Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, 1999.

Oxford Dictionary of English, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2003.

Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary Of Old And New Testament Words, W.E. Vine, Merrill F. Unger and William White, Thomas Nelson, Inc., Nashville, TN, 1984, 1996.

Study Bibles

Believer's Study Bible, W.A. Criswell, Nashville: Thomas Nelson, 1991.

The ESV Study Bible, English Standard Version® (ESV®). Copyright © 2008 by Crossway Bibles, a publishing ministry of Good News Publishers. All rights reserved.

The Nelson Study Bible, New King James Version, Earl D. Radmacher (General Editor), Thomas Nelson Publishers, Nashville, 1997.

The NIV Study Bible, K Barker (General Editor), Zondervan Bible Publishers, Grand Rapids, Michigan, 1985.

Topical Bibles

Zondervan NIV Nave's Topical Bible, John R. Kohlenberger III (General Editor), Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, USA, 1992.

The NIV Thematic Reference Bible, Alister E. McGrath, (General Editor) Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan, USA.

Topical Analysis of the Bible, Elwell, Walter A., ed., (Grand Rapids, MI: Baker Book House Company) 1991.

Major Headings

Click on a heading of one the eight parts below to go to a list of its major headings. Then click on any heading to go to the corresponding heading in the text.

Part A. [God and Spiritual Powers](#)

Part B. [God and the World: Basics](#)

Part C. [God and the World: Jesus Christ](#)

Part D. [God and His Own People](#)

Part E. [Relating to God](#)

Part F. [Church Life](#)

Part G. [Relating to People](#)

Part H. [Persevering](#)

Part A. God and Spiritual Powers

1. God's Being

I. Basics

God's Form
God's Glory
God's Personhood
God's Eternity

II. God's Pre-Eminence

God's Greatness
God's Power
God's Knowledge and Wisdom
God's Name

2. God's Character

I. Holy Characteristics

Holiness
Righteousness
Faithfulness
Anger

II. Loving Characteristics

Love
Mercy
Goodness
Jealousy

3. Jesus Christ

I. General

Jesus Christ's Eternity
Jesus Christ's Pre-Eminence
Jesus Christ's Character
Jesus Christ's Name

II. Jesus Christ and God

- Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (I): General
- Jesus Christ Is the Son of God (II): Testimony
- Jesus Christ Is Identified with God
- Jesus Christ Is Treated like God Is
- Jesus Christ Acts in Subordination to God

4. The Holy Spirit**I. General**

- The Holy Spirit of God
- The Holy Spirit's Being
- The Holy Spirit's Personhood

II. God, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit

- Mutual Association
- Mutual Divine Attributes
- Mutual Divine Roles

5. Angels, Satan and Demons**I. Angels**

- Attributes of Angels
- Angels and God
- Angels and God's People

II. Satan and Demons

- Satan's Evilness
- Satan's Power
- Satan's Work against God's People
- Demons

Part B. God and the World: Basics

6. God's Creation

I. General

- God Made All Things
- God Maintains Creation
- How God Made and Maintains Creation
- Implications of God Being Creator

II. God's Creation of People

- Life and Death
- The Human Spirit
- The Uniqueness of People
- Epilogue: God's Self-Revelation to People

7. God's Sovereignty

I. God's Supreme Authority

- The LORD Is God – the Only God
- God Reigns Supreme
- God Defeats His Enemies
- God Fulfills His Plans

II. God's Control over the World

- God Has Control over Evil
- God Has Control over Nature
- God Has Control over the Nations
- God Has Control over Each Person

8. God's Word

I. General

- What God's Word Comprises
- Characteristics of God's Word
- Functions of God's Word

II. Key Old Testament Covenants

God's Covenant with Abraham

God's Covenant with Israel and the Law

God's Dealings and Covenant with David

9. The Problem of Sin

I. General

Sin Is Breaking God's Law

Sin Is against God

Sin Is Universal

Sin Has Intrinsic Ill Effects

Sin Brings God's Anger and Death

II. The Law's Provision for Israel's Sin

Offerings for Atonement for Sinners

The Blood of the Offerings

The Role of the Priests

10. God's Judgment

I. Basics

God Is the Judge of the World

Reasons for God's Judgment

God's Judgment Is Just

II. The Manifestation of God's Judgment

Means of God's Judicial Retribution

Characteristics of God's Judicial Retribution

The Wicked and God's Pending Judgment

God's Judgment of Israel – and His Mercy

Part C. God and the World: Jesus Christ

11. God's Promised Messiah

I. The Messiah's Identity

The Promise of a Messiah in OT Scripture
Prophecy of the Messiah's Death for Sins
Jesus Is the Promised Messiah
Further Testimony to Jesus Being the Messiah

II. The Messiah's Purpose and Person

Jesus Christ's Mission from God
Jesus Christ's Humanity
Jesus Christ's Personality
Epilogue: God Works through Jesus Christ

12. Jesus Christ's Mission

I. God's Enablement of Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ's Power from God
Jesus Christ's Knowledge from God
Jesus Christ's Direction from God

II. Jesus Christ's Ministry, Death and Resurrection

Jesus Christ's Miracles
Jesus Christ's Teaching
Jesus Christ's Rejection and Death
Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Ascension

13. Salvation through Jesus Christ

I. Salvation from Sin

Jesus Christ's Sacrifice for Us
Atonement for Sin
Redemption from Sin
Jesus Christ's Resurrection and Salvation

II. Salvation for the World

The Savior of the World

Life through Jesus Christ

Salvation for the Gentiles through Jesus Christ

Epilogue: Jesus Christ's Mission and Israel

14. The New Order**I. Jesus Christ and the Law's Diminished Role**

Righteousness by Faith and Grace

Release from the Law through Jesus Christ

The Relevance of the Law

II. Key Elements of the New Order

God's New Covenant

Jesus Christ as High Priest

The Kingdom of God

Jesus Christ as Lord of All

15. 'The Last Things'**I. Jesus Christ's Return and the Final Judgment**

The Timing of Jesus Christ's Return

Jesus Christ's Return

The Final Judgment (I): Its Scope and Outcomes

The Final Judgment (II): The Process

The Millennium

II. The Afterlife

The New Creation

Eternal Life

The Heavenly State of God's People

Being with God

The Punishment for the Ungodly

Part D. God and His Own People

16. The Standing of God's People

I. Basics

Prologue: God Draws People to Himself

God's People Belong to God

God's People Are His Family

God's People Are His Church

II. Being 'in' Jesus Christ

God's People Are 'in' Jesus Christ

The Significance of Being 'in' Jesus Christ

God's People Are One Body 'in' Jesus Christ

Epilogue: God's People Relate to God through Christ

17. Keys to God's Interaction with His People

I. Basics

God Is Always with His People

God Knows His People

God Loves and Is Faithful to His People

God Shows Grace to His People

II. God's Holy Spirit in His People

God Gives the Holy Spirit to His People

God Works in His People through the Holy Spirit

The Holy Spirit Renews God's People

The Holy Spirit Helps God's People

18. God's Transformation of His People

I. General

God Makes His People Spiritually Alive

God Makes His People Holy

God Teaches His People

God Disciplines His People

II. Spiritual Attributes

Love, Faith and Hope

Peace

Joy

Wisdom and Knowledge

19. God's Care of His People**I. God's Saving of His People**

God's Capacity to Save His People

God Saves His People – from All Things

God Helps His People against Enemies

II. God's Preservation of His People

God Meets His People's Needs

God Strengthens His People

God Protects His People

20. God's Plans for His People**I. General**

God Has Plans for His People

God Fulfills His Plans for His People

God Works through His People

God Guides His People

II. God's Plans for Israel

Return to the Land

Physical Renewal and Peace

Spiritual Renewal

A Renewed Relationship with God

Glorification

Part E. Relating to God

21. Being Right with God

I. Getting Right with God

God's Invitation
Repentance
Belief in Jesus Christ
Reasons for Assurance

II. Staying Right with God

The Need to Obey God
The Need for Good Deeds
Living Free of the Law and Sin – by the Spirit
Epilogue: Living 'in' Jesus Christ

22. Having Faith in God

I. Faith and Hope

What Faith Is
What to Have Faith For
The Importance of Faith
Hope in God

II. What Not to Do

Do Not Lack Faith
Do Not Be Afraid (I): Instructions
Do Not Be Afraid (II): Reasons
Do Not Worry
Do Not Trust in Other Things

23. Loving, Fearing and Obeying God

I. Loving and Fearing God

Love God
The Importance of Loving God
Fear God

Why God Should Be Feared
The Importance of Fearing God

II. Obeying God

Obey God
How to Obey God
Follow Jesus Christ

24. Connecting with God

I. Being Close to God

Seek God
Focus on God
Meet with God and Live before Him
Know God

II. Praying to God

The Power of Prayer
Praying before God
Making Requests
God's Response to Requests

25. Exalting God

I. Instructions

Glorify and Honor God
Do Not Dishonor God
Praise and Thank God
How to Give Praise and Thanks (I): General
How to Give Praise and Thanks (II): Rejoicing

II. Reasons to Exalt God

Aspects of God's Being
Aspects of God's Character
What God Does in the World
What God Does for His People

Part F. Church Life

26. Being One Body

I. General

The Church as One Body
Be in Unison
Be in Fellowship
Love Each Other

II. Caring for the Body

Pray for Each Other (I): General
Pray for Each Other (II): What to Ask
Encourage Each Other
Help Each Other

27. Worshiping God

I. General

Worship God
Worshiping before God
Worshiping Together

II. Offerings

Reasons to Give to God
What to Give to God
How to Give to God
Righteousness and Making Offerings

28. Serving God

I. Preliminary Instructions and Insights

Be Prepared to Serve God
Be Devoted to God's Work
Reasons to Serve God
Being Guided by God

II. Doing God's Work

Do God's Work – the Best You Can
Do the Work through God
The Manner in Which to Serve God
Working with Other Believers
Spiritual Gifts

29. Significant Practices**I. Symbolic Rites**

Baptism
The Lord's Supper
Circumcision: Its Needlessness

II. Other Significant Practices

Confession of Jesus Christ
Keeping the Sabbath Holy
Fasting
The Laying on of Hands

30. Church Leadership**I. General**

Required Characteristics
Managing the Church
Caring for Church Members
Church Members' Duties to Leaders

II. Teaching in the Church

What to Teach: God's Word
How to Teach
False Teachers (I): Their Teaching
False Teachers (II): Guarding against Them

Part G. Relating to People

31. Love

I. Loving Qualities

Love: Insights

Love: Commands

Mercy

Gentleness

II. Antitheses of Love

Selfish Attitudes

Ill Feelings

Adverse Speech

Violent Actions

32. Justice

I. Justice in Action

Do What Is Just and Right

Justice and the Needy (I): Instructions

Justice and the Needy (II): Insights

II. Being True

Faithfulness

Truthfulness

Deceitfulness

Dishonest Gain

33. Wisdom

I. Being Wise

The Precedence of Godly Wisdom

Wisdom through God

Wisdom through Others

Wise Speech

Wise Personal Practices

II. Antitheses of Wisdom and Knowledge

Foolishness

Notably Foolish Practices

Spiritual Ignorance (I): Causes and Results

Spiritual Ignorance (II): Knowledge Lacked

34. Common Relationships

I. Family Relationships

Prologue: Issues regarding Marriage

Spouses

Parents' Duties to Children

Children's Duties to Parents

II. Civil Relationships

Citizens' Duties to Authorities

Authorities' Duties to Citizens

Servants and Masters

35. Spreading the Gospel

I. Instructions

Tell Others the Gospel

What Things to Explain

How to Spread the Message

Supplementary Actions

II. Insights

Insights on the Gospel Message

The Need to Spread the Gospel

God and the Gospel's Effectiveness

Part H. Persevering

36. Standing Firm

I. General

- Be Faithful to God
- Remember God and His Word
- Hold to the Faith
- Be Ready for Jesus Christ's Return

II. Spiritual Warfare

- The Existence of Spiritual Warfare
- Engaging in Spiritual Warfare
- Counteraction of Demons
- Ungodly Spiritualistic Practices

37. Rejecting Sin

I. Encountering Sin

- Consequences of Sin for God's People
- Addressing Sin (I): Return from Sin to God
- Addressing Sin (II): Deal with Sin before God
- God's Response to Repentance

II. Avoiding Sin and Being Holy

- Avoiding Sin
- Alternatives to Sin
- Be Holy

38. Major Pitfalls

I. Pride

- Pride in Thought
- Pride in Action
- Outcomes of Pride
- Antithesis of Pride: Humility

II. Riches and Sex

Riches and Godliness
Further Warnings about Riches
Sexual Sin
Prohibited Forms of Sex
Epilogue: Be Wary

39. Hard Times**I. General**

Prologue: God's People Still Have Hard Times
Mourn Loss
Keep in Mind God and His Word
Trust in God
Hope in God and Wait for Him

II. Praying in Hard Times

Tell God about Your Problems
Ask God for Help
Praise and Rejoice in God
Epilogue: God Does Respond to Suffering

40. Persecution**I. The Persecution of God's People**

The Reality of Persecution
The Antichrist and the Final Persecution
God's Care of Persecuted Believers

II. What to Do in Persecution

Be Faithful to God and Endure
Have Faith in God and Pray
Rejoice
Blessings for Faithfulness in Persecution

Scripture Index

Old Testament

Genesis

Exodus

Leviticus

Numbers

Deuteronomy

Joshua

Judges

Ruth

1 Samuel

2 Samuel

1 Kings

2 Kings

1 Chronicles

2 Chronicles

Ezra

Nehemiah

Esther

Job

Psalms

Proverbs

Ecclesiastes

Song of Songs

Isaiah

Jeremiah

Lamentations

Ezekiel

Daniel

Hosea

Joel

Amos

Obadiah

Jonah

Micah

Nahum

Habakkuk

Zephaniah

Haggai

Zechariah

Malachi

New Testament

Matthew

Mark

Luke

John

Acts

Romans

1 Corinthians

2 Corinthians

Galatians

Ephesians

Philippians

Colossians

1 Thessalonians

2 Thessalonians

1 Timothy

2 Timothy

Titus

Philemon

Hebrews

James

1 Peter

2 Peter

1 John

2 John

3 John

Jude

Revelation

Genesis

1:2 ... 42
 1:26–27 ... 64
 1:31a ... 60
 2:22–24 ... 297
 3:22 ... 65
 6:9 ... 213
 8:22 ... 61
 12:3 ... 80
 15:5b–6 ... 80
 17:3–8 ... 79
 18:25b ... 92
 24:26–27a ... 240
 31:7 ... 71
 45:4–8 ... 177

Exodus

3:13–15 ... 24
 4:31b ... 239
 12:36 ... 73
 18:20 ... 265
 20:2–6 ... 320
 20:2–11 ... 81
 20:8–11 ... 259
 20:12–17 ... 81
 20:13 ... 278
 20:14 ... 297
 20:15 ... 285
 20:16 ... 284
 20:20 ... 207
 22:28a ... 221
 23:12 ... 259
 23:19a ... 242
 28:1 ... 89
 29:9b ... 89
 33:17 ... 153
 34:5 ... 24
 34:27 ... 76
 34:27–28 ... 80
 34:28b ... 76
 35:29 ... 241

Leviticus

1:4 ... 88
 4:16–20 ... 88
 4:32 ... 87

5:5 ... 323
 5:17 ... 84
 5:19 ... 84
 16:32–34a ... 89
 17:11 ... 88
 19:11b ... 284
 19:13a ... 285
 19:13b ... 302
 19:15a ... 280
 19:17a ... 277
 19:18 ... 273
 19:22 ... 89
 19:31a ... 320
 19:34a ... 281
 20:7 ... 327
 20:8 ... 48
 22:201 ... 242

Numbers

14:11 ... 221
 14:18a ... 28
 14:23 ... 221
 15:27–28 ... 87
 23:19 ... 27, 70

Deuteronomy

1:13 ... 262
 1:31b ... 298
 4:5–6 ... 289
 4:24 ... 31
 4:29 ... 212
 4:31 ... 30
 4:34–35 ... 170
 5:21 ... 276
 6:25 ... 81
 7:10 ... 70
 8:11 ... 314
 8:14 ... 331
 8:15a ... 179
 8:18 ... 314
 10:12 ... 251
 10:16 ... 257
 10:17 ... 22
 10:20–21 ... 247
 16:9–10 ... 241
 16:20 ... 280
 17:18–19 ... 301

17:19 ... 209
 17:20 ... 330
 18:10–11 ... 320
 22:21b ... 335
 22:25 ... 278
 30:11 ... 209
 31:6 ... 201
 31:8 ... 152, 201
 31:11 ... 213
 31:23 ... 251
 32:35 ... 97
 32:39 ... 68

Joshua

1:5b ... 152
 1:6 ... 262
 1:6–7 ... 201
 1:9b ... 152
 1:9 ... 201
 1:18b ... 201
 7:5–6 ... 339
 21:45 ... 154
 24:17b ... 174

Judges

13:3 ... 72
 13:24a ... 72

Ruth

1:15–17 ... 283
 1:20b–21 ... 338

1 Samuel

1:15b ... 342
 1:16b ... 342
 2:2 ... 26
 2:3b ... 20
 3:21 ... 65
 7:3–4 ... 246
 10:9a ... 73
 12:24 ... 314
 13:13a ... 292
 14:6b ... 168

2 Samuel

5:10 ... 82
 5:12 ... 82
 7:11b–16 ... 82
 7:28a ... 68
 8:15 ... 82
 22:2–3 ... 174

1 Kings

8:16b ... 82
 8:28 ... 216
 8:52 ... 235
 8:61 ... 314
 9:4 ... 284
 12:7b ... 301
 14:22 ... 32
 16:2b ... 28
 17:14–16 ... 72
 19:3–4 ... 338
 19:5–7b ... 51

2 Kings

18:3 ... 301
 18:12 ... 90
 19:15a ... 68
 19:30–31 ... 98

1 Chronicles

5:20b ... 198
 10:13a ... 314
 16:12 ... 315
 16:14 ... 92
 22:19a ... 212
 28:9a ... 20
 28:20 ... 27
 29:11–12 ... 69

2 Chronicles

9:8b ... 301
 13:10a ... 145
 14:4 ... 212
 15:7 ... 247
 20:6 ... 23

20:12 ... 341
 20:15 ... 170
 20:17 ... 170
 20:21–22 ... 343
 20:22 ... 170
 20:29 ... 170
 31:5 ... 242
 32:6b–8 ... 235
 32:7–8 ... 201
 35:2 ... 251
 36:15 ... 20

Ezra

1:5 ... 178
 3:11 ... 240
 6:21 ... 327
 7:10 ... 209
 8:23 ... 260
 10:11 ... 323

Nehemiah

1:4b ... 216
 4:14b ... 339
 8:6 ... 240
 8:8 ... 266
 9:6a ... 60
 9:21 ... 172
 9:28–31 ... 30
 9:30–31 ... 163
 9:33 ... 163

Job

1:21b ... 344
 2:7 ... 54
 3:26 ... 338
 4:8 ... 97
 5:7 ... 338
 9:4–10 ... 62
 11:7–9 ... 22
 12:10 ... 60
 23:13 ... 70
 24:22b–23 ... 97
 33:4 ... 47
 36:18 ... 285
 36:26 ... 22

37:6 ... 60
 37:11–12 ... 71
 38:36 ... 64
 42:2 ... 23, 47

Psalms

5:3 ... 197
 5:10b ... 84
 5:11b ... 235
 9:1a ... 222
 9:8 ... 69
 9:10 ... 27
 10:4 ... 331
 12:2–3 ... 285
 18:6 ... 343
 18:39 ... 173
 19:1 ... 19
 19:8a ... 78
 19:13 ... 325
 22:11 ... 342
 22:14 ... 342
 23:4 ... 174, 344
 23:5 ... 172
 25:5 ... 169
 25:6a ... 30
 25:9 ... 162
 25:10 ... 154
 25:15 ... 341
 25:16–19 ... 342
 26:3 ... 213
 26:4–5 ... 328
 27:13–14 ... 341
 29:11b ... 165
 31:3 ... 248
 31:13b–15 ... 340
 31:23a ... 204
 32:8 ... 162
 32:10 ... 153
 33:1 ... 222
 33:4 ... 77
 33:13–15 ... 23
 34:1 ... 221
 34:4 ... 344
 34:4–6 ... 169
 34:6 ... 344
 34:7 ... 52
 34:10 ... 212
 34:14 ... 275

34:14a ... 189	90:11 ... 28	121:4–8 ... 174
34:17 ... 169	91:1–7 ... 340	132:11 ... 103
34:18 ... 344	91:9–12 ... 340	132:17–18 ... 103
34:19 ... 169	91:15 ... 20	136:1 ... 29
36:1–2 ... 294	92:15 ... 26	138:5 ... 19
36:7a ... 29	93:2 ... 21	138:7–8a ... 177
37:7 ... 341	95:6 ... 240	139:7 ... 46
37:40 ... 170	96:2–3 ... 305	139:7–8 ... 43
38:3–4 ... 322	96:7–10a ... 238	139:7–10 ... 18
38:8 ... 322	96:9 ... 205	142:3a ... 179
39:5–6a ... 63	97:12 ... 222	143:2 ... 85
40:5b ... 176	99:9 ... 223	143:5 ... 213
42:5–6a ... 341	100:3a ... 68	143:8 ... 343
46:1 ... 152, 170	102:21–22 ... 182	145:15 ... 60
46:1–3 ... 201	103:13 ... 30	147:5 ... 24
47:6a ... 222	103:20–21 ... 51	147:7–9 ... 224
48:14b ... 179	104:24 ... 61	147:15–18 ... 72
49:10 ... 334	104:30 ... 61	147:19 ... 76
50:6 ... 92	105:28–35 ... 95	150:2a ... 223
50:15 ... 342	105:43–45 ... 208	150:2b ... 223
51:1–2 ... 324	106:39 ... 85, 322	
51:7–12 ... 324	108:4 ... 29	
51:17 ... 323	111:10 ... 207	
54:6b–7 ... 225	112:6–10 ... 97	
56:3–4 ... 200	116:12 ... 31	
56:10–11a ... 224	116:16 ... 169	
56:12–13 ... 241	118:8–9 ... 202	
57:9–10 ... 224	119:9 ... 325	
62:8 ... 342	119:10 ... 212	
62:8a ... 196	119:100 ... 289	
63:6 ... 213	119:105 ... 78	
66:10–12 ... 163	119:11 ... 325	
67:4b ... 72	119:112 ... 208	
68:4 ... 222	119:120a ... 205	
69:13b–14 ... 343	119:145a ... 217	
69:30 ... 220	119:148 ... 315	
76:7–9 ... 207	119:16 ... 315	
78:4b–7 ... 298	119:18 ... 166	
78:38 ... 28	119:23 ... 339	
78:49 ... 95	119:28 ... 343	
82:3–4 ... 281	119:33–36 ... 209	
86:5 ... 153	119:49 ... 78	
86:9–10 ... 238	119:50 ... 340	
86:10 ... 68	119:51 ... 339	
86:12b ... 220	119:52 ... 340	
88:1 ... 343	119:68a ... 31	
89:2 ... 29	119:69 ... 209	
89:11–12a ... 62	119:93 ... 315	
89:16 ... 222	119:97 ... 315	
89:28 ... 153	119:166 ... 339	
		Proverbs
		1:7 ... 292
		3:3–4 ... 283
		3:5 ... 202
		3:19–20 ... 61
		4:7 ... 288
		4:11 ... 289
		6:20–23 ... 299
		6:32 ... 293
		8:10–11 ... 288
		8:13 ... 326
		9:10 ... 214, 289
		10:18 ... 293
		10:19 ... 290
		10:23 ... 292
		11:28 ... 202
		12:10a ... 65
		12:20 ... 285
		14:16 ... 289
		14:17 ... 292
		14:31 ... 220
		15:5 ... 290
		15:32 ... 290
		16:9 ... 73
		16:28 ... 278
		17:14 ... 277
		17:19a ... 277

18:12 ... 332
 19:2 ... 291
 19:17 ... 282
 19:18 ... 298
 19:23 ... 207
 20:27 ... 63
 21:3 ... 280
 21:7 ... 97
 21:26 ... 274
 22:2 ... 63
 23:12 ... 290
 23:19 ... 290
 23:19–21 ... 292
 24:7 ... 292
 24:16 ... 97
 25:6 ... 331
 27:2 ... 331
 28:26 ... 202, 293
 29:11 ... 291
 30:9b ... 221
 30:20 ... 294
 31:8–9 ... 281,
 301
 31:13–19 ... 291

Ecclesiastes

2:2 ... 293
 3:12 ... 291
 7:2 ... 63
 7:14 ... 73
 8:15 ... 291
 10:12a ... 290
 11:9b ... 136
 12:13b ... 207

Isaiah

1:17a ... 280
 5:16 ... 26, 27
 5:21 ... 330
 5:25 ... 28
 6:3 ... 26
 8:12–13 ... 205
 9:7 ... 181
 11:2 ... 43
 14:24b ... 70
 14:26–27 ... 72
 14:27 ... 70

19:21b ... 241
 25:9 ... 225
 26:3 ... 165
 32:17–18 ... 181
 35:1–2 ... 182
 40:30–31 ... 173
 43:2 ... 152
 44:6 ... 21
 45:19b ... 27
 45:21b–22 ... 68
 45:22 ... 188
 46:10 ... 24
 49:6b ... 102
 50:10 ... 197
 51:3 ... 181
 53:5–6 ... 103
 53:10–12 ... 103
 56:1 ... 280
 58:9b–11a ... 248
 58:11a ... 179
 59:2 ... 85
 60:21a ... 180
 61:1 ... 102
 61:8a ... 84
 62:2a ... 182
 64:3 ... 23

Jeremiah

1:6–10 ... 178
 1:17a ... 246
 3:15 ... 301
 5:25 ... 322
 6:19b–20a ... 244
 9:24 ... 214
 10:6–7 ... 22, 206
 10:13b ... 60
 11:4b ... 80
 11:10 ... 98
 11:20a ... 94
 12:1 ... 97
 13:15 ... 330
 14:14 ... 266
 15:6–7 ... 98
 15:20–21 ... 348
 18:7–8 ... 94
 22:15b–16a ...
 282
 22:16 ... 214

23:3 ... 180
 23:16b–17 ... 266
 23:23–24 ... 18
 23:24b ... 46
 24:7b ... 182, 324
 25:31–32 ... 96
 27:5a ... 61
 29:10–11 ... 177
 32:19b ... 93
 32:27a ... 68
 36:2 ... 76
 49:19b ... 70

Lamentations

1:8a ... 322
 2:17 ... 77
 3:19–23 ... 341
 3:22–23 ... 27
 3:25 ... 212
 3:38 ... 73
 3:40 ... 336
 5:19 ... 69

Ezekiel

1:26–28a ... 19
 3:12b ... 223
 11:5b ... 24
 16:2 ... 264
 17:20b ... 92
 18:17–18 ... 285
 20:9 ... 65
 20:19 ... 208
 32:4–6 ... 96
 35:11b ... 92
 36:33a ... 181
 36:35–36 ... 181
 39:29 ... 42, 181
 45:9 ... 278
 48:35b ... 182

Daniel

2:21b ... 289
 3:17 ... 168
 3:28 ... 300
 3:28b ... 238

- 4:34b ... 21, 220
 4:37a ... 27
 5:23b ... 73
 6:10b ... 222
 7:21–22 ... 348
 7:25 ... 347
 9:11 ... 92
 9:25a ... 102
 10:5–6 ... 50
 10:12 ... 332
 12:2 ... 136
- Hosea**
 1:7 ... 169
 12:6 ... 323
- Joel**
 2:12–13 ... 323
- Amos**
 5:7 ... 243
 5:21 ... 243
 5:23 ... 243
 7:14–15 ... 177
- Obadiah**
 1:3–4 ... 331
- Jonah**
 3:8 ... 278
- Micah**
 3:4 ... 322
 5:2 ... 102
 5:15 ... 28
 6:8 ... 280
 6:8b ... 332
 7:18–19 ... 30
 7:18b ... 28
- Nahum**
 1:7 ... 172
 2:10 ... 96
- Habakkuk**
 1:6 ... 95
 1:12b ... 95
 1:13a ... 26
 2:17a ... 65
 3:17–18 ... 344
- Zephaniah**
 1:12 ... 294
 3:17a ... 168
- Zechariah**
 1:3 ... 324
 4:6b–7 ... 156
 7:9b ... 274
 7:10a ... 281
 8:2–5 ... 32
 8:3a ... 182
 8:16a ... 284
 8:17a ... 285
 12:1b ... 63
- Malachi**
 3:3b–4 ... 243
- Matthew**
 1:18 ... 107
 1:22–23 ... 107
 3:16–17 ... 38,
 110
 4:8–10 ... 238
 4:19b–20 ... 210
 4:23 ... 114
 4:24b ... 113
 5:6 ... 172
 5:7 ... 274
 5:10 ... 352
 5:18–19 ... 128
- 5:21–22a ... 193
 5:27–28 ... 194,
 335
 5:38–42 ... 275
 6:8 ... 153
 6:9 ... 216
 6:14–15 ... 274
 6:19–21 ... 333
 6:24 ... 333
 6:31–34 ... 202
 7:1–2 ... 274
 7:7–8 ... 215
 7:9–11 ... 216
 7:15 ... 267
 7:16–18 ... 267
 7:23 ... 140
 7:24 ... 209
 8:28 ... 56
 9:27–30a ... 197
 9:36 ... 108
 9:36–38 ... 309
 10:18–20 ... 158,
 350
 10:22 ... 315
 10:28–31 ... 350
 11:27a ... 110
 11:28–30 ... 209
 11:29 ... 108
 12:10–13 ... 259
 12:28 ... 319
 12:34b–35 ... 290
 13:11a ... 166
 13:19 ... 53
 13:41 ... 51
 14:31 ... 200
 14:33 ... 39
 16:16 ... 105
 16:27 ... 136
 17:19–20 ... 198
 18:2–4 ... 189
 18:8–9 ... 326
 18:19–20 ... 215
 19:6 ... 297
 19:9 ... 296
 21:9 ... 105
 21:18–22 ... 217
 21:22 ... 198
 22:33 ... 114
 22:37–40 ... 205
 22:46 ... 112

23:25 ... 276
 24:4–14 ... 316
 24:9 ... 347
 24:26–27 ... 316
 24:29–30a ... 135
 24:35a ... 138
 24:36–39 ... 134
 24:42–44 ... 316
 25:20–21 ... 302
 25:31 ... 35
 25:40 ... 147
 25:41 ... 56
 25:41–46 ... 282
 26:28 ... 119
 27:26–31 ... 115
 27:35 ... 115
 27:39–40 ... 115
 27:45–46 ... 115
 27:50 ... 115
 27:50–52 ... 38
 27:54 ... 38
 28:2 ... 50
 28:19 ... 45
 28:19–20a ... 40
 28:20b ... 152

Mark

1:14–15 ... 131
 1:25–27 ... 56
 3:11 ... 38
 4:26–29 ... 131
 4:37 ... 113
 4:37–40 ... 200
 4:39 ... 113
 7:37 ... 113
 9:28–29 ... 319
 10:16 ... 260
 10:23 ... 333
 12:28b–31 ... 272
 12:29b ... 18
 12:32 ... 18
 12:42–44 ... 242
 13:20 ... 144
 16:15 ... 304
 16:15b–16 ... 309
 16:20a ... 304

Luke

1:19a ... 51
 1:36–37 ... 23
 1:68–69 ... 225
 1:69–70 ... 105
 1:73b–75 ... 251
 2:37 ... 260
 2:40 ... 111
 3:11 ... 281
 4:5–6 ... 53
 5:17b ... 111
 6:22–23 ... 351
 6:24–25a ... 334
 6:27–28 ... 273,
 351
 6:31 ... 273
 6:36 ... 274
 6:38 ... 282
 6:46 ... 208
 8:15 ... 247
 8:39 ... 305
 8:53–55a ... 113
 9:23 ... 247
 9:35b ... 104
 9:39 ... 56
 11:14 ... 54
 11:21–22 ... 54
 12:8 ... 258
 12:33a ... 281
 17:20b–21 ... 131
 18:1 ... 217
 18:9–14 ... 330
 18:13 ... 324
 20:22–26 ... 111
 21:9–11 ... 134
 21:15 ... 35
 21:27 ... 135
 22:28 ... 283
 22:35 ... 173
 23:4 ... 114
 23:20–24 ... 114
 24:22–24 ... 116

John

1:3 ... 61
 1:11 ... 124
 1:12–13 ... 145,
 161

1:16 ... 154
 1:32–34 ... 38
 3:2 ... 111
 3:16 ... 123, 190
 3:17 ... 106, 122
 3:18b ... 136
 3:19b–20 ... 293
 3:34 ... 110
 3:36 ... 123
 4:23–24 ... 239
 4:24 ... 18
 4:34 ... 112
 4:41–42 ... 114
 5:16–18 ... 114
 5:19 ... 112
 5:21 ... 48
 5:24 ... 188
 5:26 ... 21, 34
 5:36 ... 106
 5:39–40 ... 294
 6:9–11 ... 113
 6:29 ... 190
 6:35 ... 172
 6:37 ... 191
 6:44 ... 144
 6:63 ... 78, 156,
 160
 6:63a ... 48
 6:68 ... 78
 8:3–4 ... 334
 8:7–11 ... 334
 8:19 ... 294
 8:28b ... 111
 8:31 ... 210
 8:31–32 ... 162
 8:34 ... 85
 8:44 ... 53
 9:22b ... 258
 10:3b ... 153
 10:10 ... 122
 10:14 ... 153
 10:29 ... 22
 10:35 ... 76
 11:25 ... 34
 11:25–26 ... 123
 11:27b ... 190
 11:32–35 ... 339
 11:51b–52 ... 124
 13:3 ... 132
 13:15 ... 210

13:34–35 ... 233
 14:1 ... 200
 14:6 ... 122
 14:7–9 ... 39
 14:16–17a ... 157
 14:21b ... 205
 14:23 ... 204
 14:24b ... 114
 14:26 ... 43
 14:27 ... 165
 15:2a ... 247
 15:4–5 ... 249
 15:7 ... 194
 15:9 ... 108
 15:10 ... 194
 15:11 ... 165
 15:12–13 ... 233
 15:15b ... 111
 15:16a ... 249
 15:18–19 ... 346
 15:26–27 ... 310
 16:2–4a ... 346
 16:11b ... 54
 16:22 ... 166
 16:23 ... 217
 16:26a ... 217
 16:30 ... 35, 111
 16:30a ... 47
 16:33 ... 165
 17:2 ... 110
 17:5 ... 34
 17:11b ... 39
 17:17 ... 77
 17:20 ... 309
 17:21a ... 39
 18:37b ... 106
 20:17 ... 40
 20:28 ... 39
 20:30–31 ... 105
 20:31 ... 38, 136

Acts

1:3 ... 116
 1:8 ... 157
 1:9–11 ... 116
 1:14 ... 232, 240
 2:22 ... 112
 2:23 ... 115

2:24 ... 116
 2:32 ... 116
 2:36 ... 304
 2:44–45 ... 236
 2:45 ... 281
 3:19 ... 189
 3:19–20 ... 104
 3:26 ... 124
 4:4a ... 309
 4:12 ... 122
 4:27 ... 36
 4:12 ... 122
 4:29–30 ... 351
 4:29–31 ... 250,
 307
 4:30 ... 40
 4:31 ... 158
 4:32 ... 231
 4:33 ... 179
 5:3b ... 45
 5:4b ... 45
 5:27b–29 ... 300
 5:31–32 ... 46
 6:9–10 ... 43
 7:44 ... 179
 7:55 ... 19
 7:59 ... 39, 64
 8:2 ... 339
 8:12 ... 255
 8:17 ... 260
 8:35 ... 304
 9:20 ... 304
 9:28 ... 306
 9:31b ... 44
 9:36 ... 281
 9:39 ... 281
 10:3–5 ... 52
 10:33b ... 179
 10:36 ... 132
 10:36a ... 308
 10:38 ... 110
 10:38a ... 104
 10:43 ... 105, 190
 11:20–23a ... 144
 11:23 ... 235, 314
 13:2–3 ... 260
 13:5a ... 76
 13:17b ... 168
 13:36 ... 176
 14:3 ... 310

14:22b ... 346
 15:1–2 ... 257
 15:3–4a ... 230
 15:11 ... 257
 16:18 ... 319
 17:2–3 ... 64, 104
 17:11 ... 267
 17:24a ... 62
 17:25b ... 63
 17:26 ... 73
 17:26–27 ... 188
 17:30 ... 189
 17:31a ... 93
 18:5b ... 304
 18:25 ... 306
 18:28 ... 104
 19:5 ... 254
 20:21 ... 189, 305
 20:28 ... 146, 263
 22:16 ... 255
 23:1 ... 336
 23:1b ... 213
 26:22a ... 170
 26:25–26 ... 308
 27:23–24 ... 52
 27:23–25 ... 196
 28:23b ... 266,
 305

Romans

1:3–4 ... 38
 1:7 ... 145
 1:14–15 ... 309
 1:16 ... 304, 310
 1:19–20 ... 65
 1:26–27 ... 336
 2:3 ... 96
 2:5–6 ... 94
 2:6–7 ... 193
 2:8 ... 276
 2:11 ... 27
 2:12 ... 137
 2:16b ... 136
 3:20 ... 128
 3:20–22a ... 126
 3:21–22a ... 190
 3:22a ... 123
 3:23 ... 19, 85

3:24 ... 126
 3:30 ... 123
 5:1 ... 119
 5:3-4 ... 351
 5:5 ... 155
 5:8 ... 118
 5:9 ... 119
 5:12 ... 86
 6:2b-5 ... 254
 6:6-8 ... 160
 6:11b ... 160
 6:14 ... 128
 6:19b ... 327
 6:21 ... 86
 6:22 ... 120, 192,
 327
 6:23 ... 86
 7:6 ... 193, 250
 7:12 ... 77
 8:3b ... 107
 8:3b-5 ... 193,
 326
 8:9 ... 46
 8:14 ... 157
 8:15-16 ... 155,
 191
 8:17 ... 146
 8:17-18 ... 352
 8:26 ... 157
 8:26b ... 44
 8:27 ... 42, 44
 8:31 ... 171, 317
 8:32a ... 115
 8:35 ... 171
 8:37 ... 171, 317
 10:1 ... 307
 10:12-13 ... 36
 11:5 ... 124
 11:11b ... 124
 11:15 ... 124
 11:33-34 ... 223
 11:36b ... 223
 12:1 ... 247
 12:1b ... 244
 12:2 ... 328
 12:10 ... 331
 12:13 ... 236
 12:15 ... 232
 12:18 ... 275
 13:1 ... 73

13:1-3a ... 300
 13:3b-4a ... 301
 13:8-10 ... 273
 13:13 ... 277
 14:8 ... 145
 14:10b ... 136
 14:19 ... 231
 15:6 ... 220
 15:9a ... 224
 15:13 ... 165
 15:16b ... 48
 15:30 ... 44
 16:5a ... 230
 16:12 ... 249
 16:20a ... 54
 16:26b ... 192

12:31b ... 272
 13:1-3 ... 272
 13:4-7 ... 272
 13:13 ... 273
 15:3-5 ... 305
 15:17-23 ... 121
 15:23-25 ... 135
 15:28 ... 40
 15:34a ... 323
 15:42-44 ... 138
 15:49 ... 139
 15:58b ... 246
 16:2 ... 243
 16:14 ... 273
 16:15b-16 ... 232

1 Corinthians

1:8 ... 173
 1:10 ... 231
 1:18 ... 310
 2:4-5 ... 310
 2:9-10 ... 156
 2:10b ... 47
 2:11b ... 42
 3:5 ... 176
 3:6-7 ... 250
 3:16 ... 146
 3:18-19 ... 288
 3:20b ... 288
 6:14 ... 138
 6:15 ... 336
 6:18 ... 335
 7:32-35 ... 296
 8:6 ... 47
 10:12 ... 325
 10:13 ... 71, 325
 10:16-17 ... 256
 10:24 ... 276
 10:31 ... 220
 10:33 ... 276, 307
 11:3b ... 40
 11:23-25 ... 255
 11:32 ... 93
 12:7-10 ... 252
 12:12 ... 230
 12:24b-25 ... 236
 12:27 ... 230

2 Corinthians

1:3-4 ... 344
 1:3-5 ... 352
 1:8-11 ... 350
 1:10 ... 199
 1:12b ... 284
 1:20a ... 108
 1:24 ... 198
 3:17-18 ... 45
 3:18b ... 162
 4:2b ... 306
 4:4b ... 37
 4:11 ... 352
 5:17 ... 161
 5:19 ... 305
 5:21 ... 148
 6:14-15 ... 296
 8:2 ... 166
 8:2-3a ... 242
 8:7a ... 264
 8:9 ... 276
 9:5-6 ... 243
 9:7 ... 243
 9:14 ... 154
 12:7-9 ... 55
 12:9b-10 ... 348
 12:19b ... 236, 264
 13:4b ... 147
 13:7a ... 234
 13:14 ... 45

Galatians

1:11–12 ... 308
 2:21 ... 127
 3:6–7 ... 124
 3:24–25 ... 127
 3:28 ... 149
 5:6 ... 257
 5:13 ... 251
 5:18 ... 44
 5:22–23 ... 157
 5:22–23a ... 44
 5:24 ... 85
 6:2 ... 236
 6:6 ... 264

5:2 ... 118, 273
 5:3 ... 334
 5:6 ... 267
 5:21 ... 231
 5:22–24 ... 297
 5:25 ... 297
 5:25–27 ... 48
 6:2–3 ... 299
 6:12 ... 55, 317
 6:13–15 ... 318
 6:16 ... 318
 6:17 ... 318
 6:18 ... 234, 318
 6:19–20 ... 250
 6:23 ... 164
 6:24 ... 204

1:21–22 ... 119
 1:28–29 ... 306
 2:1–2 ... 236
 2:5–7 ... 194
 2:11–13 ... 148
 2:13 ... 85
 2:16–17 ... 259
 3:9–10 ... 284
 3:12 ... 236
 3:12a ... 145
 3:20 ... 299
 3:22 ... 302
 4:1 ... 302
 4:3–4 ... 307
 4:6 ... 290
 4:13 ... 264

Ephesians

1:1 ... 147
 1:3 ... 225
 1:11 ... 20, 70
 1:13a ... 309
 1:13b–14 ... 155
 1:17 ... 40
 1:17–19 ... 166
 1:19 ... 23, 179
 1:23 ... 149
 2:2 ... 53
 2:3 ... 86
 2:8–9 ... 127, 193
 2:10 ... 176, 249
 2:18 ... 150
 2:19 ... 145
 2:21–22 ... 146
 3:8b–9 ... 308
 3:14 ... 216
 3:18–19 ... 36
 3:20–21 ... 223
 4:1–2 ... 275
 4:2a ... 332
 4:4–6 ... 44
 4:10 ... 35
 4:10b ... 46
 4:11–13 ... 252
 4:17 ... 328
 4:18 ... 293
 4:26–27 ... 277
 4:28 ... 284
 4:29 ... 235
 4:31 ... 277

Philippians

1:9–11 ... 234
 1:18b–19 ... 234
 1:27 ... 307
 1:28a ... 317
 2:3 ... 331
 2:3a ... 276
 2:5–6 ... 37
 2:9–11 ... 132
 2:11 ... 258
 2:12b–13 ... 178
 3:12 ... 139
 3:20–21 ... 35
 3:20b–21a ... 47
 4:3a ... 251
 4:4 ... 222
 4:6 ... 218
 4:6–7 ... 165, 202
 4:19 ... 173

Colossians

1:5 ... 199
 1:9 ... 263
 1:10 ... 315
 1:11 ... 173
 1:13–14 ... 148
 1:15–18 ... 35
 1:18 ... 149
 1:19 ... 37
 1:20 ... 108

1 Thessalonians

1:3a ... 198
 2:2 ... 306
 2:7 ... 298
 2:7b ... 263
 2:8 ... 262
 3:2b ... 304
 3:5 ... 54
 4:9 ... 164
 4:16–17 ... 135
 4:17b ... 140
 5:2 ... 134
 5:6 ... 336
 5:9 ... 119
 5:16–18 ... 221
 5:23–24 ... 161

2 Thessalonians

1:5 ... 93, 139
 1:7b ... 50, 135
 2:3b–4 ... 134
 2:13b ... 156
 3:1 ... 234
 3:3 ... 36, 174
 3:7–9 ... 263
 3:7b–8 ... 291

1 Timothy

1:17 ... 21
 2:5–6 ... 120
 3:11 ... 283
 4:6 ... 265
 4:13 ... 265
 5:4 ... 299
 5:17 ... 263
 5:21 ... 280
 6:4a ... 332
 6:7 ... 334
 6:9–10 ... 333
 6:15a ... 69
 6:17 ... 199, 334
 6:18 ... 274

2 Timothy

1:8 ... 232
 1:8b ... 348
 1:11–12a ... 346
 1:14 ... 155
 2:8 ... 107
 2:23–24 ... 231
 2:26 ... 54
 3:11b ... 348
 3:12 ... 346
 3:16–17 ... 265
 3:16a ... 76
 4:2a ... 265
 4:2b ... 266
 4:16–17 ... 173
 4:17–18 ... 169

Titus

1:6 ... 296
 1:7–8 ... 246, 262
 2:4 ... 298
 2:7b–8 ... 266
 2:10 ... 302
 2:13 ... 199
 2:14 ... 120
 3:1 ... 300

Philemon

1:8–9a ... 263

Hebrews

1:1–2 ... 20
 1:2 ... 108
 1:2b–3a ... 61
 1:6 ... 51
 1:14 ... 52
 2:9a ... 123
 2:9b ... 116
 2:14–15 ... 107
 2:17–18 ... 107
 3:1 ... 258
 3:6a ... 146
 4:12 ... 78
 4:12a ... 77
 4:14 ... 37
 4:15–16 ... 325
 5:9 ... 192
 6:9–10 ... 192
 6:10 ... 236
 6:17–18 ... 164
 7:19a ... 126
 7:24–25 ... 34
 7:27b ... 118
 8:1b–2 ... 130
 8:6–7 ... 129
 8:10–12 ... 129
 8:13 ... 129
 9:14a ... 43
 9:26b–28a ... 119
 10:1 ... 127
 10:10 ... 127
 10:12 ... 128
 10:12–13 ... 132
 10:12–14 ... 130
 10:17–18 ... 128
 10:19–22 ... 149
 10:24 ... 251
 10:25 ... 230
 10:25b ... 235
 10:26–27 ... 96
 10:35–36 ... 315
 11:1 ... 199
 11:6 ... 188
 11:8 ... 198
 11:32–34 ... 197
 12:2–3 ... 349
 12:5–8 ... 162
 12:9a ... 298
 12:23b ... 64

12:28–29 ... 239
 13:4 ... 335
 13:5 ... 333
 13:6 ... 170, 201
 13:8 ... 34
 13:9 ... 154
 13:12 ... 162
 13:15 ... 221, 244
 13:17 ... 264
 13:20–21 ... 178

James

1:1a ... 40
 1:2–4 ... 351
 1:5 ... 31, 166,
 289
 1:6 ... 200
 1:12 ... 352
 1:17 ... 21
 1:19 ... 290
 1:19–20 ... 277
 1:27 ... 282
 2:19 ... 56
 2:26 ... 64
 2:26 ... 64
 4:7a ... 209
 4:7b ... 318
 4:8a ... 20
 4:17 ... 84
 5:9 ... 278
 5:11b ... 20
 5:13 ... 342
 5:16b–18 ... 215

1 Peter

1:2a ... 157
 1:3–4 ... 164
 1:5 ... 174
 1:6 ... 346
 1:8–9 ... 225
 1:12 ... 306
 1:13 ... 199
 1:13a ... 246
 1:14–16 ... 327
 1:21 ... 196
 1:24–25a ... 78
 2:1 ... 277

2:5b ... 244
 2:9a ... 145
 2:11 ... 317, 326
 2:18 ... 302
 3:15 ... 210
 3:18a ... 108
 3:21 ... 121
 4:11 ... 250
 4:13 ... 350
 5:1b ... 139
 5:5b ... 332
 5:6–7 ... 172
 5:7 ... 202
 5:8 ... 317

2 Peter

1:20–21 ... 77
 3:5b ... 61
 3:7 ... 93
 3:8 ... 21
 3:13 ... 138, 197

1 John

1:3 ... 232
 1:9 ... 189, 191,
 324
 2:1 ... 130
 2:1b ... 36
 2:2 ... 119
 2:3 ... 191
 2:3–4 ... 214
 2:13a ... 34
 2:14a ... 214
 2:14b ... 171
 2:22 ... 267

3:4 ... 84
 3:5a ... 106
 3:14 ... 191
 3:17–18 ... 233
 3:20 ... 47
 3:20b ... 23
 3:21–22 ... 218
 3:24b ... 42, 155
 4:1–3a ... 319
 4:4 ... 43, 47
 4:6 ... 319
 4:7 ... 233
 4:7–8 ... 214
 4:8–10 ... 29
 4:9b ... 37
 4:12 ... 233
 4:14 ... 122
 4:15 ... 258
 4:16 ... 29
 4:16b ... 233
 4:16b–18 ... 206
 4:20 ... 277
 5:1 ... 204
 5:3 ... 204
 5:11b ... 48
 5:14–15 ... 218
 5:17a ... 84
 5:19b ... 53
 5:20a ... 106

2 John

1:6b ... 273

3 John

1:3 ... 315

Jude

1:20 ... 216
 1:21 ... 139
 1:24 ... 139

Revelation

1:1 ... 52
 1:5b ... 120
 2:9 ... 153
 2:10 ... 349
 2:10a ... 55
 2:13 ... 349
 4:11 ... 224
 5:9 ... 120
 5:11a ... 51
 7:11–12 ... 51
 7:15 ... 140
 11:15–17 ... 69
 11:18 ... 93
 12:7 ... 56
 13:7a ... 347
 13:7b–8 ... 347
 13:10 ... 349
 14:7 ... 239
 15:4a ... 207
 17:17 ... 71
 19:6 ... 140, 224
 19:13 ... 77
 20:4b–5 ... 137
 20:14b–15 ... 140
 21:2 ... 138
 21:3b ... 140
 21:27 ... 138
 22:4 ... 140

Subject Index

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

A

Aaron, 89
Abraham, 79
 faith of, 80
Access to God, 150
Adultery, 297
Afterlife, 138, 199, 334
Angels
 and God, 51, 95
 and God's people, 52
 and Jesus Christ, 135
 attributes of, 50
Anger, 277
Anguish, 322
Anointing
 of Jesus Christ, 102, 104
Antichrist, 267, 347
Armor, spiritual, 318
Assurance, 155, 191
Atonement
 in NT, 119
 in OT, 87, 89
Atonement, Day of, 89
Authorities, civil. *See* **civil authorities**
Authority, in the church, 263

B

Bad company, 328
Baptism, 254
Belief. *See also* **faith**

 in God, 188, 196, 217
 in Jesus Christ, 144, 190, 255, 310
 outcomes of, 136, 190
 reasons for, 114

Belonging, 145
Bitterness, 277
Blasphemy, 221
Blessings, 154, 225
 giving, 260, 351
 things leading to, 282, 352
Blood, 88
 in OT offerings, 88
 of Jesus Christ, 256
Boasting, 331
Boldness, 306
Bribery, 285

C

Canaan, 79
Care
 divine, 172, 197, 199, 239, 348
 for others, 214, 298
Children, 124
 duties of, 299
 parents' duties to, 298
Children of God, 145, 162
Choice, by God, 144
 of Israel, 82
 of Jesus Christ, 104
Church
 as God's, 146

as one body, 149, 230
 fellowship of, 232
 unity of, 231
 Church leaders
 church members' duties to, 264
 relating to members, 263
 requirements of, 262
 Circumcision, 256, 257
 Citizens, 300
 Civil authorities, 300, 301
 Closed-mindedness, 293
 Comfort, divine, 344
 Commands of God, 128, 208, 265, 314, 315
 Commissioning, 260
 Compassion, human, 236. *See also*
 God, compassion of; Jesus
 Christ, compassion of
 Condemnation, 54, 136
 Confession
 of Jesus Christ, 258
 of sins, 323
 Confidence, 341
 Conformity, 328
 Confrontation, 264
 Conscience, 336
 Consequences, 334, 335
 Contempt, 221
 Contentment, 333
 Courage, 201, 251
 Covenant, 76
 the new, 129
 with Abraham, 79
 with David, 82, 103
 with Israel, 80, 98
 Coveting, 276
 Creation
 and God, 60, 62. *See also* God,
 creative work of
 renewal of, 138

D

David
 God's covenant with, 82, 103
 Jesus Christ descended from,
 103, 107
 Death
 as judgment for sin, 85, 86, 86
 physical, 63, 64, 86, 334, 339
 spiritual, 85, 160
 Deceit, 53, 284, 294, 316
 Deeds, judgment of, 136
 Defilement, 85, 322
 Deliverance, from trouble, 113,
 152, 163, 167, 169, 225, 241,
 343, 348. *See also* enemies,
 deliverance from
 Demons, 55
 possession by, 56
 Denial, of Jesus Christ, 267
 Desire, sinful, 326
 Devotion, 246
 Discipleship, 210
 Discipline, 290
 divine, 93, 162
 family, 298
 Dishonest gain, 285
 Dishonoring God, 221
 Disobedience, 292, 314
 Divorce, 297
 Doubt, 200, 217
 Drunkenness, 292

E

Earnestness, 188, 217
 Earth, 69
 Encouragement, 235, 251. *See also*
 trouble, encouragement in
 End times. *See* last days

Endurance, 349, 351
Enemies, 170
 deliverance from, 201
 love for, 273
 of God, 70
 spiritual, 317
Eternal life, 78, 136, 138, 190
 gift of, 122
 through Jesus Christ, 136
Evaluation, 336
Evil, 26, 65, 207, 289
 divine help against, 174
 God's power over, 71
 Jesus Christ's power over, 135
 responding to, 326
Example, 263. *See also* Jesus
 Christ, example of
Extortion, 285

F

Faith, 195, 298, 318, 350. *See also*
 belief; trust
 and deeds, 192
 as a body of beliefs, 265
 blessings of, 198
 from God, 164
 in Jesus Christ, 126. *See also*
 belief, in Jesus Christ
 in prayer, 217
 lack of, 200
 necessity of, 126, 194
 what it involves doing, 196. *See*
 also belief; trust
Faithfulness
 to God, 314, 349
 to people, 283, 302
Falling away, 333
False gods, 320
False teachers, teaching of, 266
Family, of God, 145

Fasting, 260
Favoritism, 27, 280
Fear
 of God, 205
 and wisdom, 289
 blessings of, 207
 reasons for, 206
 of people
 exhortation against, 200, 205,
 350
 reasons not to, 201
Fellowship
 amongst believers, 232
 with God and Jesus Christ, 232
Final judgment, the, 136
Fire, 140
Firstfruits, 242
Flattery, 285
Focussing on God, 202, 213
Following Jesus Christ, 210, 349
Foolishness, 231, 292, 310
Footstool, 132
Foreigners, 281
Forgiveness
 human, 274
 of sin, 30, 129, 190, 274, 324,
 324
 through Jesus Christ, 118, 148
Fornication, 335
Freedom, 169
Fruit, spiritual, 157, 249
Future, the, 24, 97

G

Generosity, 242, 274
Gentiles, 123
 as part of God's people, 149
Gentleness, 263, 275
Giving

- to God. *See* offerings
- to needy, 281
- Glorifying God
- instructions on, 220
- reasons to, 223
- Glory. *See also* God, glory of; Jesus Christ, glory of
- for God's people, 138, 182, 352
- Gluttony, 292
- God
- anger of, 28, 86, 119
- compassion of, 30
- creative work of, 60, 61, 224, 239
- deeds of, 23, 68, 213, 238, 298, 305, 315
- for his people, 247, 305
- eternity of, 21
- faithfulness of, 27, 154, 163, 224
- fatherhood of, 145, 216
- generosity of, 31
- glory of, 19, 182, 223, 238
- goodness of, 31, 77
- grace of, 127, 154
- greatness of, 22, 206, 223
- holiness of, 26, 77, 207, 223, 327
- incomprehensibility of, 22
- jealousy of, 31
- justice of, 93
- kindness of, 31
- knowledge of, 23, 93, 153, 223
- love of, 29, 153, 162, 205, 224
- mercy of, 30, 224
- name of, 266
- oneness of, 18
- patience of, 30
- personhood of, 20
- plans and purposes of, 70, 71, 175, 297
- power of, 23, 54, 61, 62, 78, 96, 111, 131, 168, 179, 201, 223, 310. *See also* God, deeds of
- presence of, 18, 19, 42, 149
- with people, 152, 182, 201, 213, 216, 344
- promises of, 27, 76, 154, 164
- reign of, 224
- righteousness of, 27, 69, 77, 93, 163
- self-existence of, 21
- sovereignty of, 62, 67, 206, 238
- the only God, 68, 170
- transcendence of, 21
- unchanging, 21, 29, 70
- uniqueness of, 26
- will of, 20, 112, 115, 218, 300.
- See also* God, plans and purposes of
- wisdom of, 24, 61, 62, 223, 310
- God's people
- as belonging to God, 145
- God's work. *See also* serving God
- empowerment for, 178
- through his people, 156, 177, 179
- Godliness, 136, 246, 248, 262
- Gods, false. *See* false gods
- Good deeds, 192, 273
- Good news, 308
- Gospel, the
- call to tell, 304
- God and effectiveness of, 310
- insights on, 308
- spreading of, 234, 306, 346
- what to say, 304
- Gossip, 278
- Grace. *See also* God, grace of; Jesus Christ, grace of
- and Christian life, 128, 154
- and salvation, 127, 193

- Graciousness, 290
 Greed, 276
 Growth, spiritual, 234, 315, 351
 Grumbling, 278
 Guarantee, 155
 Guarding
 by God, 174
 exhortation to, 267
 Guidance
 by God, 177, 179
 receiving God's, 248, 343
- H**
- Hands, laying on of, 260
 Happiness, 291
 Haste, 291
 Hate, 277, 326, 346
 Head, Jesus Christ as, 149
 Heart, 24, 73, 257, 290, 342
 Heaven, 116, 130, 139
 Heavens and earth, 60, 138
 Heir, 146. *See also* inheritance
 Help
 divine, 170, 178, 201, 209, 250, 306, 325
 of others, 236, 264, 299
 High priest
 in OT, 89
 Jesus Christ as, 130
 Holiness, 259
 as separation from the worldly, 327
 exhortation to, 251, 327
 of God's people, 181
 produced by God, 161
 Holy Spirit, the
 and God's presence, 42, 146, 155
 and inspiration of Scripture, 77
 and salvation, 156
 and sanctification, 157
 and spiritual gifts, 252
 as the Spirit of God, 42, 46
 assurance from, 191
 empowerment by, 157
 eternity of, 43
 gift of, 155, 181, 260
 God's work through, 156
 in creation, 61
 in Jesus Christ's mission, 104, 107, 110
 in ministry, 250
 in prayer, 216
 in spread of the gospel, 306, 310
 in worship, 239
 knowledge of, 43
 living by, 193
 identification with God and Jesus Christ, 45
 personal characteristics of, 44
 personhood of, 44
 power of, 43
 renewal by, 156
 work through believers, 158
 Homosexuality, 336
 Honesty, 284
 Honoring
 God, 220
 people, 299, 331
 Hope, in God, 78, 199, 341, 350
 and faith, 199
 God as source of, 164
 importance of, 199
 Humility, 275, 332
 before God, 324
 Hunger, 172
 Husband, 297

I

Identification

of Jesus Christ with believers,
147, 148

Idols, 320

Ignorance, spiritual, 293

Image of God, people as, 64

Imprisonment, 169

Inheritance. *See also* heir

Inspiration, of Scripture, 77

Integrity, 284

Intercession, 130

Interest, monetary, 285

Invitation to salvation, 188

Israel

and Jesus Christ, 102, 124
as God's people, 80, 182
judgment of, 98
renewal of, 180

J

Jealousy, 277

Jerusalem, 182

the new, 138

Jesus Christ

as creator, 61
as high priest, 130, 149
as judge, 136
as Lord, 132, 146, 210
as savior, 102, 122, 122
as Son of God, 29, 37, 190
as the Messiah, 104, 190
as Word of God, 77
ascension of, 116
birth of, 107
body of, 149, 230
compassion of, 108
death of, 103, 115, 123, 148,
149, 233, 255, 305

deeds of, 38, 105, 110, 113
descendant of David, 103, 107
divinity of, 37, 39, 39. *See also*
Jesus Christ, identification
with God
enablement by God, 110
eternity of, 34
exaltation of, 103, 116
example of, 210, 349
faithfulness of, 36
gentleness of, 108
glory of, 35, 116, 135
God's work through, 108, 114,
122, 123, 127, 129, 136
greatness of, 35
holiness of, 36
humanity of, 107
humility of, 108
justice of, 102
knowledge of, 35, 111
love of, 36, 108, 233
mission of, 106, 107, 131
name of, 36, 217, 254
offering of, 118, 128, 130
identification with God, 39
power of, 35, 54, 110, 132
pre-eminence of, 35
pre-existence of, 34
presence of, 35
prophecies concerning, 102,
104
reign of, 137
rejection of, 124, 136
resurrection of, 103, 104, 116,
121, 138, 148, 305
return of, 134, 173, 199
righteousness of, 36, 108, 181
salvation through, 106
self-existence of, 34
servanthood of, 40
sovereignty of, 110. *See also*
Jesus Christ, reign of

- subordination of, 40
- suffering of, 103, 104, 232, 349
- teaching of, 114, 194
- unchanging, 34
- wisdom of, 35, 111
- worship of, 39
- Jews, the, 124
 - and Gentiles, 124, 149
- Joy, 78, 139, 165, 232, 291
- Judgment of God, 91. *See also*
 - punishment
 - characteristics of, 96
 - justness of, 93
 - means of, 95
 - reasons for, 86, 92, 274, 335
 - the final judgment, 136
- Judgment, human
 - exhortation against, 274
- Justice, 280, 302
 - administration of, 301
- Justification, 119, 126

- K**
- Kingdom of God, 114, 131, 305
 - entry into, 139, 352
- Knowing God, 39, 106, 129, 214, 294
- Knowledge, 65, 137, 315
 - from God, 162, 166

- L**
- Land, 180
- Last days, persecution in, 347, 348
- Law, 76, 273
 - and Jesus Christ, 126
 - and righteousness, 126
 - breaking of, 84, 98
 - fulfillment of, 127
 - limitations of, 126, 129
 - living free of, 193
 - obedience to, 81, 80, 298, 301
 - overview of, 80
 - release from, 127, 193
 - relevance of, 128
 - Ten Commandments, 81
- Lies, 266
- Life, 34, 88
 - physical, 63, 207, 334
 - spiritual, 78, 156, 160
 - through Jesus Christ, 122, 148
- Light, 19
 - spiritual, 78
- Listening
 - to others, 290
- Living with Jesus Christ, 147. *See also*
 - union with Jesus Christ
- LORD, 24, 68
- Lord's Supper, the, 255
- Love
 - divine enablement to, 164
 - for God, 204
 - for other Christians, 191, 233, 262, 264
 - for others, 272, 297, 298
 - how to, 233
 - importance of, 214
 - miscellaneous, 333
- Loyalty, 283
- Lust, 335
- Lying, 284

- M**
- Marriage, 296
- Masters, 302
- Meditation, 315, 339
- Meekness, 275
- Meeting

with God, 213
 with other believers, 230
 Mercy. *See also* God, mercy of;
 Jesus Christ, mercy of
 human, 274
 Messiah, the
 identified with Son of God, 105
 Jesus Christ as, 104
 prophecies concerning, 102,
 181
 Millennium, 137
 Mind, 24, 73
 Miracles, 72, 111, 113, 310
 Mourning, 339
 Murder, 278
 Mystery, 308

N

Nations
 and Israel, 80, 182
 and Jesus Christ, 102
 God's power over, 72
 judgment of, 95
 turning to God of, 182
 Nature, 65, 95, 113
 God's power over, 71
 Needs, met by God, 172
 Needy, the
 insights on helping, 282
 instructions on helping, 281,
 301
 Neighbor, 273
 New creation. *See also* creation,
 renewal of
 believers as a, 161

O

Obedience
 aids to, 198, 207
 and faith, 192, 198
 blessings of, 80, 81, 191, 289
 need for, 192, 204, 214, 218
 to God, 40, 128, 208, 298, 339
 to people, 264, 299, 300, 302
 Offering, 319
 Offerings. *See also* Jesus Christ,
 offering of
 and righteousness, 243
 in OT, 87
 instructions for, 242
 reasons for, 241
 spiritual, 244
 Oppression, 278
 Overcoming, 171

P

Parents
 children's duties to, 299
 duties of, 298
 Participation
 in church life, 232
 in Jesus Christ, 256
 Patience, 275, 341
 Peace, 165, 181
 with God, 119
 with others, 231, 275
 People, God's control over, 73
 Persecution
 blessings of, 352
 divine help in, 348
 nature of, 346
 responding to, 234, 349
 Persistence, 217, 235, 315, 315,
 343

Plans, as subject to God's will, 73.

See also God, plans and purposes of

Pleasure, 293

Possessions, 281

Power. *See* God, power of; God's work, empowerment for; Holy Spirit, power of; Holy Spirit, empowerment by

Praise, 140, 220, 222, 240

how to, 221, 240

in suffering, 343

reasons to, 223

Prayer, 39, 222, 318

before God, 216

corporate, 260

faith in, 197, 217

for others, 234, 263

God's response to, 215, 218

importance of, 215

in suffering, 342

making requests in, 217, 343

things to ask, 209, 248, 250, 289, 307, 324, 325, 343, 351

through Jesus Christ, 150

Pride

in action, 331

in thought, 330

outcomes of, 331

Priests, 89, 129

and offerings, 89

Prophecy, 76, 77

Prostitution, 336

Protection, 174

Provision, 202, 224, 241

Punishment, 56, 206. *See also* judgment of God

civil, 300

eternal, 140

reasons for, 282, 294, 322

Q

Quarrelling, 231, 277

Questioning, 97

Quietness, 341

R

Ransom, 120

Rape, 278

Readiness, 316

Rebellion, 84

Rebirth, 161

Reconciliation, 119

Redemption, from sin, 120, 148

Refuge, 174, 340

Regulations, 192

Rejoicing, 222, 225, 225, 344, 351

Relationship with God, 324

Remembering, 255, 314

Remnant, 98, 124, 180

Renewal, spiritual, 160, 181. *See also* Israel, renewal of

Repayment, 94

Repentance, 189, 324

Respect, 302

Response, 189, 305, 309

Responsibility, 309

Rest, 259

Restoration, 324, 324

Resurrection

of believers, 121, 138

of the dead, 136

Returning, to God, 323

Revelation of God, 65

through creation, 65

through salvation, 170

Reverence, 216, 239

Reward, [93](#), [136](#), [136](#), [247](#), [315](#),
[351](#)

Riches, [202](#), [333](#)

Righteous living, [192](#), [222](#), [243](#),
[251](#), [327](#)

Righteousness, [81](#), [85](#)
and Jesus Christ's work, [119](#),
[126](#), [148](#), [190](#)
by faith, [126](#)

Rulers

God's power over, [69](#)

Rulers, God's power over, [73](#)

S

Sabbath, [259](#)

Salvation, [119](#), [257](#)

by grace, [127](#)

for the world, [122](#)

from sin, [117](#)

open to all, [188](#)

requirements of, [192](#), [192](#)

through Jesus Christ, [29](#), [105](#),
[107](#), [122](#), [127](#), [136](#), [225](#), [309](#)

Sanctification, [139](#)

Sanctification, means of, [161](#)

Sanctuary, the heavenly, [130](#)

Satan

and God's people, [54](#), [317](#)

divine help against, [171](#), [174](#)

evilness of, [53](#)

power of, [53](#)

resistance to, [318](#)

Scripture, [76](#). *See also* [word of God](#)

Seal, [155](#)

Seeking God, [188](#), [212](#)

Self-control, [291](#)

Selfishness, [276](#)

Self-righteousness, [330](#)

Separation, from God, [85](#), [140](#)

Servants, [301](#), [302](#)

Serving God, [40](#), [140](#), [244](#), *See also* [God's work](#)

how to, [249](#), [314](#)

preparation for, [246](#)

reasons to, [247](#)

Serving people, [251](#)

Sex, [297](#)

Sexual immorality, [334](#)

Sharing, [232](#), [236](#), [274](#)

Shepherd, [263](#)

Sin, [255](#)

as being against God, [84](#)

avoiding, [207](#), [325](#)

confession of, [323](#)

dealing with, [323](#)

defined, [84](#)

effects of, [28](#), [32](#), [86](#), [293](#), [322](#)

freedom from, [120](#)

Jesus Christ's death for, [118](#),
[128](#), [130](#)

punishment for, [86](#), [92](#)

returning from, [323](#)

salvation from, [106](#), [117](#)

universality of, [85](#)

Sincerity, [284](#)

Sinful nature, [85](#), [193](#), [326](#)

Singing, [222](#)

Slander, [277](#)

Slavery

general, [149](#)

spiritual, [85](#), [327](#)

Sorrow, [323](#)

removal of, [181](#)

Sowing and reaping, [97](#)

Speaking

adverse, [277](#)

divine help in, [158](#), [350](#)

insights on, [290](#)

instructions on, 235, 290
 Spirit, human, 63
 Spiritual gifts, 252
 Spiritual warfare
 engaging in, 317
 existence of, 317
 Spouses, 296
 Standing firm, 198, 315
 Stealing, 285
 Strengthening
 by God, 154, 173, 343, 348
 of others, 235, 264
 Submission
 to God, 209
 to people, 231, 297, 300, 302
 Suffering, 338, 346, 349, 352, 351
 causes of, 54, 322
 God's response to, 169, 344
 praise in, 343
 prayer in, 342
 trusting God in, 340
 Support, 264

T

Teaching, 290, 299, 315
 divine, 156, 162
 God's word in, 265
 how to, 266
 parental, 298
 Temper, 292
 Temple, God's people as a, 146
 Temptation, 54, 325
 Ten Commandments, 81
 Testimony
 false, 284
 Testimony, to Jesus Christ, 305
 Testing, 163
 Thanksgiving, 218, 220, 222, 240,
 343

 how to, 221, 240
 reasons for, 223, 241
 Thirst, 172
 Trembling, 205
 Trinity, the
 mutual association, 45
 mutual attributes, 46
 mutual roles, 47
 Trouble
 causes of, 292, 322
 encouragement in, 152, 153,
 166, 173, 177, 179
 sharing in others', 232
 Trust. *See also* faith
 in God, 196, 200, 202, 202, 340
 misplaced, 202
 Trustworthiness, 283, 302
 Truth, 77, 106, 162, 308
 Truthfulness, 284
 Turning, 189, 322, 323

U

Uncleanness, spiritual, 322
 Unfaithfulness, 92, 314
 Unfruitfulness, 247
 Ungodliness, 293
 Union with Jesus Christ
 and baptism, 254
 living in, 194
 nature of, 147
 significance of, 148, 160
 Unity, of God's people, 124, 231

V

Victory, 170
 Violence, 278

W

Waiting, on God, 341

Warfare, spiritual. See [spiritual warfare](#)

Warning, 94

Washing, 255

Watchfulness, 267, 316

Weapons, spiritual, 318

Weeping, 339

Wholeheartedness, 212, 222, 251, 323

Wicked, judgment of the, 93, 97

Wife, 297

Willingness, 243

Wisdom, 262, 292, 301
precedence of, 288
through God, 166, 207, 289
through others, 290
worldly, 288

Witchcraft, 319

Word of God, 224, 315, 318

characteristics of, 77

elements of, 76

functions of, 61, 78

God's communication of, 76

remembering, 339

use of, 209, 265, 267, 325

Work, 291, 306

Works, and righteousness and salvation, 127

World, 106

God as judge of, 92

salvation for, 106, 122

Worldliness, 328

Worry, 202, 350

Worship, 39, 237

false, 347

how to, 239, 241, 260

reasons to, 238

with other Christians, 240

Supporting Persecuted Christians

Over 200 million Christians in at least 60 countries are denied basic human rights solely because of their faith. (Source: World Evangelical Alliance) Every year many Christians are killed because of their faith.

Through prayer, encouragement and practical assistance we can assist and fellowship with persecuted Christians in their suffering. You can play a vital part in this through contacting one of the organizations listed below. Most produce regular news/prayer letters.

Barnabas Fund – www.barnabasfund.org

It provides material and spiritual support based on locally identified needs.

Christian Faith and Freedom – www.cffreedom.org

It advocates on behalf of and aids persecuted Christians.

Christian Solidarity International – www.csi-int.org

CSI works to defend religious liberty and help persecuted Christians.

Christian Solidarity Worldwide – www.csw.org.uk

It advocates for freedom of religion and justice for persecuted believers.

Compass Direct – www.compassdirect.org

This is a Christian news service focusing on persecuted Christians.

Open Doors – sb.od.org; www.opendoors.org.au

It equips believers for persecution and witnessing to the Gospel.

Religious Liberty Commission – www.worldevangelicals.org/commissions/rlc

RLC defends and aids persecuted Christians. See also www.idop.org.

Religious Liberty Prayer Bulletin – rlprayerbulletin.blogspot.com.au

It provides weekly bulletins. Send a blank email to join-rlpb@hub.xc.org.

The Bible League – www.bibleleague.org/persecuted; www.bibleleague.com

It supplies Bibles to persecuted Christians and also provides training.

Voice of the Martyrs – www.persecution.com; www.persecution.com.au

VOM helps persecuted Christians spread the gospel. It also gives material aid.

Then the King will answer, 'I tell you the truth, anything you did for even the least of my people here, you also did for me.' Matthew 25:40 NCV

Quick Navigation

Contents – Foreword – Using the PDF File – The Seven Editions

- A.** 1. God's Being
- 2. God's Character
- 3. Jesus Christ
- 4. The Holy Spirit
- 5. Angels, Satan and Demons
- B.** 6. God's Creation
- 7. God's Sovereignty
- 8. God's Word
- 9. The Problem of Sin
- 10. God's Judgment
- C.** 11. God's Promised Messiah
- 12. Jesus Christ's Mission
- 13. Salvation through Jesus Christ
- 14. The New Order
- 15. 'The Last Things'
- D.** 16. The Standing of God's People
- 17. Keys to God's Interaction with His People
- 18. God's Transformation of His People
- 19. God's Care of His People
- 20. God's Plans for His People
- E.** 21. Being Right with God
- 22. Having Faith in God
- 23. Loving, Fearing and Obeying God
- 24. Connecting with God
- 25. Exalting God
- F.** 26. Being One Body
- 27. Worshiping God
- 28. Serving God
- 29. Significant Practices
- 30. Church Leadership
- G.** 31. Love
- 32. Justice
- 33. Wisdom
- 34. Common Relationships
- 35. Spreading the Gospel
- H.** 36. Standing Firm
- 37. Rejecting Sin
- 38. Major Pitfalls
- 39. Hard Times
- 40. Persecution

Gen Ex Lev Num Deut Jos Jdg Ruth 1Sa 2Sa 1Ki 2Ki 1Ch 2Ch Ezr Neh Est Job Ps Prov Ecc SS
Isa Jer Lam Ezk Dan Hos Joel Ams Obd Jnh Mic Nah Hab Zep Hag Zec Mal
Mt Mk Lk Jn Ac Ro 1Co 2Co Gal Eph Php Col 1Th 2Th 1Ti 2Ti Tit Pm Heb Jas 1P 2P 1J 2J 3J Jd Rev

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z

Supporting Persecuted Christians

A. – **H.** link to *Major Headings*. Bible books link to *Scripture Index*. A–Z link to *Subject Index*.